

# **Oracle® Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Network-Based Installations**

Copyright © 2011, 2012, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS. Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle America, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

---

Ce logiciel et la documentation qui l'accompagne sont protégés par les lois sur la propriété intellectuelle. Ils sont concédés sous licence et soumis à des restrictions d'utilisation et de divulgation. Sauf disposition de votre contrat de licence ou de la loi, vous ne pouvez pas copier, reproduire, traduire, diffuser, modifier, breveter, transmettre, distribuer, exposer, exécuter, publier ou afficher le logiciel, même partiellement, sous quelque forme et par quelque procédé que ce soit. Par ailleurs, il est interdit de procéder à toute ingénierie inverse du logiciel, de le désassembler ou de le décompiler, excepté à des fins d'interopérabilité avec des logiciels tiers ou tel que prescrit par la loi.

Les informations fournies dans ce document sont susceptibles de modification sans préavis. Par ailleurs, Oracle Corporation ne garantit pas qu'elles soient exemptes d'erreurs et vous invite, le cas échéant, à lui en faire part par écrit.

Si ce logiciel, ou la documentation qui l'accompagne, est concédé sous licence au Gouvernement des Etats-Unis, ou à toute entité qui délivre la licence de ce logiciel ou l'utilise pour le compte du Gouvernement des Etats-Unis, la notice suivante s'applique:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS. Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle America, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

Ce logiciel ou matériel a été développé pour un usage général dans le cadre d'applications de gestion des informations. Ce logiciel ou matériel n'est pas conçu ni n'est destiné à être utilisé dans des applications à risque, notamment dans des applications pouvant causer des dommages corporels. Si vous utilisez ce logiciel ou matériel dans le cadre d'applications dangereuses, il est de votre responsabilité de prendre toutes les mesures de secours, de sauvegarde, de redondance et autres mesures nécessaires à son utilisation dans des conditions optimales de sécurité. Oracle Corporation et ses affiliés déclinent toute responsabilité quant aux dommages causés par l'utilisation de ce logiciel ou matériel pour ce type d'applications.

Oracle et Java sont des marques déposées d'Oracle Corporation et/ou de ses affiliés. Tout autre nom mentionné peut correspondre à des marques appartenant à d'autres propriétaires qu'Oracle.

Intel et Intel Xeon sont des marques ou des marques déposées d'Intel Corporation. Toutes les marques SPARC sont utilisées sous licence et sont des marques ou des marques déposées de SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, le logo AMD et le logo AMD Opteron sont des marques ou des marques déposées d'Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX est une marque déposée d'The Open Group.

Ce logiciel ou matériel et la documentation qui l'accompagne peuvent fournir des informations ou des liens donnant accès à des contenus, des produits et des services émanant de tiers. Oracle Corporation et ses affiliés déclinent toute responsabilité ou garantie expresse quant aux contenus, produits ou services émanant de tiers. En aucun cas, Oracle Corporation et ses affiliés ne sauraient être tenus pour responsables des pertes subies, des coûts occasionnés ou des dommages causés par l'accès à des contenus, produits ou services tiers, ou à leur utilisation.

# Contents

---

<b>Preface</b> .....	9
<b>Part I Planning to Install Over the Network</b> .....	13
<b>1 Where to Find Oracle Solaris Installation Planning Information</b> .....	15
Where to Find Planning and System Requirement Information .....	15
<b>2 Preconfiguring System Configuration Information (Tasks)</b> .....	17
Advantages of Preconfiguring System Configuration Information .....	17
Preconfiguring With the <code>sysidcfg</code> File .....	18
▼ To Create a <code>sysidcfg</code> Configuration File .....	19
Syntax Rules for the <code>sysidcfg</code> File .....	21
<code>sysidcfg</code> File Keywords .....	22
SPARC: Preconfiguring Power Management Information .....	40
<b>3 Preconfiguring With a Naming Service or DHCP</b> .....	41
Choosing a Naming Service .....	41
Preconfiguring With the Naming Service .....	43
▼ To Preconfigure the Locale Using NIS .....	44
▼ To Preconfigure the Locale Using NIS+ .....	46
Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks) .....	47
Creating DHCP Options and Macros for Oracle Solaris Installation Parameters .....	48

<b>Part II</b>	<b>Installing Over a Local Area Network</b>	59
<b>4</b>	<b>Installing From the Network (Overview)</b>	61
	Network Installation Introduction	61
	Required Servers for Network Installation	61
	x86: Overview of Booting and Installing Over the Network With PXE	64
	x86: What is PXE?	64
	x86: Guidelines for Booting With PXE	64
<b>5</b>	<b>Installing From the Network With DVD Media (Tasks)</b>	65
	Task Map: Installing From the Network With DVD Media	66
	Creating an Install Server With DVD Media	68
	▼ To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media	68
	Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image	71
	▼ To Create a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image	71
	Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image	73
	▼ To Add Systems to Be Installed From the Network With <code>add_install_client</code> (DVD) ...	74
	Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image	79
	▼ SPARC: To Install the Client Over the Network (DVD)	79
	▼ x86: To Install the Client Over the Network With GRUB (DVD)	81
<b>6</b>	<b>Installing From the Network With CD Media (Tasks)</b>	87
	Task Map: Installing From the Network With CD Media	88
	Creating an Install Server With SPARC or x86 CD Media	90
	▼ SPARC: To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 CD Media	90
	Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image	95
	▼ To Create a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image	95
	Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image	97
	▼ To Add Systems to Be Installed From the Network With <code>add_install_client</code> (CDs) ....	97
	Installing the System From the Network With a CD Image	102
	▼ SPARC: To Install the Client Over the Network (CDs)	102
	▼ x86: To Install the Client Over the Network With GRUB (CDs)	104

<b>7</b>	<b>Patching the Miniroot Image (Tasks)</b> .....	111
	Patching the Miniroot Image (Tasks) .....	111
	About the Miniroot Image (Overview) .....	111
	▼ How To Patch the Miniroot Image .....	112
	Patching the Miniroot Image (Example) .....	113
	Patching the Miniroot Image .....	113
<b>8</b>	<b>Installing Over the Network (Examples)</b> .....	117
	Network Installation Over the Same Subnet (Examples) .....	118
<b>9</b>	<b>Installing From the Network (Command Reference)</b> .....	125
	Network Installation Commands .....	125
	x86: GRUB Menu Commands for Installation .....	126
<b>Part III</b>	<b>Installing Over a Wide Area Network</b> .....	131
<b>10</b>	<b>WAN Boot (Overview)</b> .....	133
	What Is WAN Boot? .....	133
	When to Use WAN Boot .....	134
	How WAN Boot Works (Overview) .....	135
	Sequence of Events in a WAN Boot Installation .....	135
	Protecting Data During a WAN Boot Installation .....	137
	Security Configurations Supported by WAN Boot (Overview) .....	139
	Secure WAN Boot Installation Configuration .....	139
	Insecure WAN Boot Installation Configuration .....	140
<b>11</b>	<b>Preparing to Install With WAN Boot (Planning)</b> .....	141
	WAN Boot Requirements and Guidelines .....	141
	Web Server Software Requirements and Guidelines .....	143
	Server Configuration Options .....	143
	Storing Installation and Configuration Files in the Document Root Directory .....	144
	Storing Configuration and Security Information in the /etc/netboot Hierarchy .....	146
	Storing the wanboot - cgi Program .....	149
	Digital Certificate Requirements .....	149

WAN Boot Security Limitations .....	150
Gathering Information for WAN Boot Installations .....	150
<b>12 Installing With WAN Boot (Tasks) .....</b>	<b>153</b>
Installing Over a Wide Area Network (Task Maps) .....	153
Configuring the WAN Boot Server .....	157
Creating the Document Root Directory .....	157
Creating the WAN Boot Miniroot .....	158
Verifying WAN Boot Support on the Client .....	161
Installing the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server .....	162
Creating the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server .....	165
Copying the WAN Boot CGI Program to the WAN Boot Server .....	167
▼ (Optional) To Configure the WAN Boot Logging Server .....	168
(Optional) Protecting Data by Using HTTPS .....	169
▼ (Optional) To Use Digital Certificates for Server and Client Authentication .....	170
▼ (Optional) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key .....	173
Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files .....	175
▼ To Create the Flash Archive .....	176
▼ To Create the sysidcfg File .....	178
▼ To Create the Profile .....	179
▼ To Create the rules File .....	180
(Optional) Creating Begin and Finish Scripts .....	183
Creating the Configuration Files .....	183
▼ To Create the System Configuration File .....	183
▼ To Create the wanboot.conf File .....	185
(Optional) Providing Configuration Information With a DHCP Server .....	190
<b>13 SPARC: Installing With WAN Boot (Tasks) .....</b>	<b>191</b>
Task Map: Installing a Client With WAN Boot .....	191
Preparing the Client for a WAN Boot Installation .....	192
▼ To Check the net Device Alias in the Client OBP .....	192
Installing Keys on the Client .....	194
Installing the Client .....	199
▼ To Perform a Noninteractive WAN Boot Installation .....	200
▼ To Perform an Interactive WAN Boot Installation .....	202

---

▼ To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With a DHCP Server .....	206
▼ To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With Local CD Media .....	207
<b>14 SPARC: Installing With WAN Boot (Examples) .....</b>	<b>213</b>
Sample Site Setup .....	214
Create the Document Root Directory .....	215
Create the WAN Boot Miniroot .....	215
Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support .....	215
Install the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server .....	216
Create the /etc/netboot Hierarchy .....	216
Copy the wanboot - cgi Program to the WAN Boot Server .....	217
(Optional) Configure the WAN Boot Server as a Logging Server .....	217
Configure the WAN Boot Server to Use HTTPS .....	217
Provide the Trusted Certificate to the Client .....	217
(Optional) Use Private Key and Certificate for Client Authentication .....	218
Create the Keys for the Server and the Client .....	218
Create the Flash Archive .....	219
Create the sysidcfg File .....	219
Create the Client's Profile .....	220
Create and Validate the rules File .....	220
Create the System Configuration File .....	221
Create the wanboot . conf File .....	221
Check the net Device Alias in OBP .....	223
Install Keys on the Client .....	223
Install the Client .....	224
<b>15 WAN Boot (Reference) .....</b>	<b>227</b>
WAN Boot Installation Commands .....	227
OBP Commands .....	230
System Configuration File Settings and Syntax .....	231
wanboot . conf File Parameters and Syntax .....	231

<b>Part IV</b>	<b>Appendices</b> .....	235
<b>A</b>	<b>Troubleshooting (Tasks)</b> .....	237
	Problems With Setting Up Network Installations .....	237
	Problems With Booting a System .....	238
	Booting From Media, Error Messages .....	238
	Booting From Media, General Problems .....	239
	Booting From the Network, Error Messages .....	240
	Booting From the Network, General Problems .....	243
	Initial Installation of the Oracle Solaris OS .....	244
	▼ x86: To Check IDE Disk for Bad Blocks .....	244
	Upgrading the Oracle Solaris OS .....	246
	Upgrading, Error Messages .....	246
	Upgrading, General Problems .....	248
	▼ To Continue Upgrading After a Failed Upgrade .....	249
	x86: Problems With Live Upgrade When You Use GRUB .....	249
	▼ System Panics When Upgrading With Live Upgrade Running Veritas VxVM .....	251
	x86: Service Partition Not Created by Default on Systems With No Existing Service Partition .....	253
	▼ To Install Software From a Network Installation Image or From the Oracle Solaris DVD .....	254
	▼ To Install From the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD or From a Network Installation Image .....	254
<b>B</b>	<b>Installing or Upgrading Remotely (Tasks)</b> .....	255
	SPARC: Using the Installation Program to Install or Upgrade From a Remote DVD-ROM or CD-ROM .....	255
	▼ SPARC: To Install or Upgrade From a Remote DVD-ROM and CD-ROM .....	255
	<b>Glossary</b> .....	259
	<b>Index</b> .....	271



# Preface

---

This book describes how to install the Oracle Solaris operating system remotely over a local area network or a wide area network.

This book does not include instructions about how to set up system hardware or other peripherals.

---

**Note** – This Oracle Solaris release supports systems that use the SPARC and x86 families of processor architectures. The supported systems appear in the *Oracle Solaris OS: Hardware Compatibility Lists*. This document cites any implementation differences between the platform types.

In this document, these x86 related terms mean the following:

- x86 refers to the larger family of 64-bit and 32-bit x86 compatible products.
- x64 relates specifically to 64-bit x86 compatible CPUs.
- "32-bit x86" points out specific 32-bit information about x86 based systems.

For supported systems, see the *Oracle Solaris OS: Hardware Compatibility Lists*.

---

## Who Should Use This Book

This book is intended for system administrators who are responsible for installing the Oracle Solaris software. This book provides advanced Oracle Solaris installation information for enterprise system administrators who manage multiple Oracle Solaris machines in a networked environment.

For basic installation information, see *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*.

## Related Books

[Table P-1](#) lists documentation for system administrators.

**TABLE P-1** Are You a System Administrator Who is Installing Oracle Solaris?

Description	Information
Do you need system requirements or high-level planning information? Or want a high-level overview of Oracle Solaris ZFS installations, booting, Oracle Solaris Zones partitioning technology, or creating RAID-1 volumes?	<i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>
Do you need to install a single system from DVD or CD media? The Oracle Solaris installation program steps you through an installation.	<i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Basic Installations</i>
Do you need to upgrade or patch your system with almost no downtime? Save system downtime when upgrading by using Live Upgrade, a feature of Oracle Solaris.	<i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning</i>
Do you need to install a secure installation over the network or Internet? Use WAN boot to install a remote client. Or, do you need to install over the network from a network installation image? The Oracle Solaris installation program steps you through an installation.	<i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Network-Based Installations</i>
Do you need to install or patch multiple systems quickly? Use Flash Archive, a feature of Oracle Solaris, to create an archive and install a copy of the OS on clone systems.	<i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Flash Archives (Creation and Installation)</i>
Do you need to back up your system?	Chapter 22, “Backing Up and Restoring UFS File Systems (Overview),” in <i>System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems</i>
Do you need troubleshooting information, a list of known problems, or a list of patches for this release?	<i>Oracle Solaris Release Notes</i>
Do you need to verify that your system works on Oracle Solaris?	SPARC: <i>Solaris Sun Hardware Platform Guide</i>
Do you need to check on which packages have been added, removed, or changed in this release?	<i>Oracle Solaris Package List</i>
Do you need to verify that your system and devices work with Solaris SPARC and x86 based systems and other third-party vendors.	<a href="#">Solaris Hardware Compatibility List for x86 Platforms</a>

## Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

## Typographic Conventions

The following table describes the typographic conventions that are used in this book.

TABLE P-2 Typographic Conventions

Typeface	Description	Example
AaBbCc123	The names of commands, files, and directories, and onscreen computer output	Edit your <code>.login</code> file. Use <code>ls -a</code> to list all files. <code>machine_name%</code> you have mail.
<b>AaBbCc123</b>	What you type, contrasted with onscreen computer output	<code>machine_name%</code> <b>su</b> Password:
<i>aabbcc123</i>	Placeholder: replace with a real name or value	The command to remove a file is <i>rm filename</i> .
<i>AaBbCc123</i>	Book titles, new terms, and terms to be emphasized	Read Chapter 6 in the <i>User's Guide</i> . <i>A cache</i> is a copy that is stored locally. Do <i>not</i> save the file. <b>Note:</b> Some emphasized items appear bold online.

## Shell Prompts in Command Examples

The following table shows the default UNIX system prompt and superuser prompt for shells that are included in the Oracle Solaris OS. Note that the default system prompt that is displayed in command examples varies, depending on the Oracle Solaris release.

TABLE P-3 Shell Prompts

Shell	Prompt
Bash shell, Korn shell, and Bourne shell	\$

**TABLE P-3** Shell Prompts *(Continued)*

Shell	Prompt
Bash shell, Korn shell, and Bourne shell for superuser	#
C shell	machine_name%
C shell for superuser	machine_name#

## PART I

# Planning to Install Over the Network

This part describes how to plan your installation over the network.



# Where to Find Oracle Solaris Installation Planning Information

---

This book describes how to install the Oracle Solaris OS remotely over a local area network or a wide area network.

This chapter describes the preparations for completing a successful installation. Many preparatory tasks are common to all Oracle Solaris installations, and so are described in one master planning document.

## Where to Find Planning and System Requirement Information

The *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* provides system requirements and high-level planning information, such as planning guidelines for file systems, and upgrade planning and much more. The following list describes the chapters in the planning book.

Chapter Descriptions From the Planning Guide	Reference
This chapter describes new features in the Oracle Solaris installation programs.	Chapter 2, “What’s New in Oracle Solaris Installation,” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>
This chapter provides you with information about decisions you need to make before you install or upgrade the Oracle Solaris OS. For example, you’ll find information on deciding when to use a network installation image or DVD media and descriptions of all the Oracle Solaris installation programs.	Chapter 3, “Oracle Solaris Installation and Upgrade (Roadmap),” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>
This chapter describes system requirements to install or upgrade to the Oracle Solaris OS. General guidelines for planning the disk space and default swap space allocation are also provided. Upgrade limitations are also described.	Chapter 4, “System Requirements, Guidelines, and Upgrade (Planning),” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>

Chapter Descriptions From the Planning Guide	Reference
<p>This chapter contains checklists to help you gather all of the information that you need to install or upgrade your system. This is useful if you are doing an interactive installation. You'll have all the information in the checklist that you'll need to do an interactive installation.</p>	<p><a href="#">Chapter 5, “Gathering Information Before Installation or Upgrade (Planning),” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i></a></p>
<p>This book part includes chapters that provide overviews of several technologies that relate to Oracle Solaris OS installation or upgrade. Guidelines and requirements related to these technologies are also included. These chapters include information about ZFS installations, booting, Oracle Solaris Zones partitioning technology, and RAID-1 volumes that can be created at installation.</p>	<p><a href="#">Part II, “Understanding Installations That Relate to ZFS, Booting, Oracle Solaris Zones, and RAID-1 Volumes,” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i></a></p>



# Preconfiguring System Configuration Information (Tasks)

---

This chapter describes how to preconfigure system information by using the `sysidcfg` file. Preconfiguration can help you to avoid being prompted for this information when you install the Oracle Solaris OS. This chapter also describes how to preconfigure Power Management information. This chapter contains the following sections:

- “Advantages of Preconfiguring System Configuration Information” on page 17
- “Preconfiguring With the `sysidcfg` File” on page 18
- “SPARC: Preconfiguring Power Management Information” on page 40

## Advantages of Preconfiguring System Configuration Information

The installation methods require configuration information about a system, such as peripheral devices, host name, Internet Protocol (IP) address, and naming service. Before the installation tools prompt you for configuration information, they check for configuration information that is stored elsewhere.

You can choose one of the following ways to preconfigure system information.

TABLE 2-1 Preconfiguration Options

Preconfiguration File or Service	Description	Further Information
<code>sysidcfg</code> file	Preset the domain name, netmask, DHCP, IPv6 and other parameters by using keywords in the <code>sysidcfg</code> file.	“Preconfiguring With the <code>sysidcfg</code> File” on page 18

TABLE 2-1 Preconfiguration Options (Continued)

Preconfiguration File or Service	Description	Further Information
Naming service	Preset host name and IP addresses by preconfiguring your system information in your naming service.	<a href="#">“Preconfiguring With the Naming Service” on page 43</a>
DHCP	DHCP enables host system in a TCP/IP network to be configured automatically for the network as the system boots. DHCP can manage IP addresses by leasing them as needed to clients.	<a href="#">“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47</a>

For more detailed information about choosing a preconfiguration method, see [“Choosing a Naming Service” on page 41](#).

When the Oracle Solaris installation program or the custom JumpStart installation program detects preconfigured system information, the installation program does not prompt you to enter the information. For example, you have several systems and you do not want a time zone prompt every time you install the current Oracle Solaris release on one of the systems. You can specify the time zone in the `sysidcfg` file or the naming service databases. When you install the current Oracle Solaris release, the installation program does not prompt you to type a time zone.

## Preconfiguring With the `sysidcfg` File

You can specify a set of keywords in the `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure a system. The keywords are described in [“`sysidcfg` File Keywords” on page 22](#).

---

**Note** – The `name_service` keyword in the `sysidcfg` file automatically sets the naming service during installation of the Oracle Solaris OS. This setting overrides SMF services previously set up for `site.xml`. Therefore, you might need to reset your name service after installation.

---

You must create a unique `sysidcfg` file for every system that requires different configuration information. You can use the same `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure the time zone on a set of systems if you want all the systems to be assigned the same time zone. However, if you want to preconfigure a different root (superuser) password for each of those systems, you need to create a unique `sysidcfg` file for each system.

You can place the `sysidcfg` file in one of the following.

TABLE 2-2 sysidcfg Locations

NFS file system	If you put the <code>sysidcfg</code> file in a shared NFS file system, you must use the <code>-p</code> option of the <code>add_install_client(1M)</code> command when you set up the system to install from the network. The <code>-p</code> option specifies where the system can find the <code>sysidcfg</code> file when you install the current Oracle Solaris release.
UFS or PCFS diskette	Place the <code>sysidcfg</code> file in the root ( <code>/</code> ) directory on the diskette.  If you are performing a custom JumpStart installation and you want to use a <code>sysidcfg</code> file on a diskette, you must place the <code>sysidcfg</code> file on the profile diskette. To create a profile diskette, see “ <a href="#">Creating a Profile Diskette for Standalone Systems</a> ” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations</i> .  You can place only one <code>sysidcfg</code> file in a directory or on a diskette. If you are creating more than one <code>sysidcfg</code> file, you must place each file in a different directory or on a different diskette.
HTTP or HTTPS server	If you want to perform a WAN boot installation, place the <code>sysidcfg</code> file in the document root directory of the web server.

You can use the naming service or DHCP to preconfigure your system. For information, see [Chapter 3, “Preconfiguring With a Naming Service or DHCP”](#)

## ▼ To Create a sysidcfg Configuration File

- 1 Create a file called `sysidcfg` in a text editor with the keywords you want.
- 2 Make the `sysidcfg` file available to clients by using one of the locations described at [Table 2-2](#).

### Example 2-1 SPARC: sysidcfg File

The following is an example of a `sysidcfg` file for a SPARC based system. The host name, IP address, and netmask of this system have been preconfigured by editing the naming service. Because all of the system configuration information is preconfigured in this file, you can use a custom JumpStart profile to perform a custom JumpStart installation. In this example, the

NFSv4 domain name is automatically derived from the naming service. Because the `service_profile` keyword is not included in this example, configuration is not altered for the network services during installation.

```
keyboard=US-English
system_locale=en_US
timezone=US/Central
terminal=sun-cmd
timeserver=localhost
name_service=NIS {domain_name=marquee.central.example.com
                  name_server=nmsvr2(172.31.112.3)}
nfs4_domain=dynamic
root_password=m4QP0WNY
network_interface=hme0 {hostname=host1
                        default_route=172.31.88.1
                        ip_address=172.31.88.210
                        netmask=255.255.0.0
                        protocol_ipv6=no}
security_policy=kerberos {default_realm=example.com
                           admin_server=krbadmin.example.com
                           kdc=kdc1.example.com,
                           kdc2.example.com}
```

### Example 2-2 x86: sysidcfg File

The following sample `sysidcfg` file is for a group of x86 based systems. In this example, the NFSv4 domain name is specified to be `example.com`. This custom name overrides the default domain name. Also in this example, the network services are disabled or restricted to local connections only.

```
keyboard=US-English
timezone=US/Central
timeserver=timehost1
terminal=ibm-pc
service_profile=limited_net

name_service=NIS {domain_name=marquee.central.example.com
                  name_server=nmsvr2(172.25.112.3)}
nfs4_domain=example.com
root_password=URFUn19
```

### Example 2-3 sysidcfg File for Configuring Multiple Interfaces

In the following sample `sysidcfg` file, configuration information is specified for both the `eri0` and `eri1` network interfaces. The `eri0` interface is configured as the primary network interface, and `eri1` is configured as a secondary network interface. In this example, the NFSv4 domain name is automatically derived from the naming service.

```
timezone=US/Pacific
system_locale=C
terminal=xterms
timeserver=localhost
```

```

network_interface=eri0 {primary
    hostname=host1
    ip_address=192.168.2.7
    netmask=255.255.255.0
    protocol_ipv6=no
    default_route=192.168.2.1}

network_interface=eri1 {hostname=host1-b
    ip_address=192.168.3.8
    netmask=255.255.255.0
    protocol_ipv6=no
    default_route=NONE}

root_password=JE2C35JGZi4B2
security_policy=none
name_service=NIS {domain_name=domain.example.com
    name_server=nis-server(192.168.2.200)}
nfs4_domain=dynamic

```

## More Information **Continuing the Installation**

If you plan to use the `sysidcfg` file in an installation over the network, you need to set up an installation server and add the system as an installation client. For more information, see [Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network \(Overview\)”](#).

If you plan to use the `sysidcfg` file in a WAN boot installation, you need to perform additional tasks. For more information, see [Chapter 10, “WAN Boot \(Overview\)”](#).

If you plan to use the `sysidcfg` file in a custom JumpStart installation, you need to create a profile and a `rules.ok` file. For more information, see [Chapter 2, “Custom JumpStart \(Overview\)”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

**See Also** For more information about the `sysidcfg` file, see the man page [sysidcfg\(4\)](#).

## Syntax Rules for the sysidcfg File

You can use two types of keywords in the `sysidcfg` file: independent and dependent. Dependent keywords are guaranteed to be unique only within independent keywords. A dependent keyword exists only when it is identified with its associated independent keyword.

In this example, `name_service` is the independent keyword, while `domain_name` and `name_server` are the dependent keywords:

```

name_service=NIS {domain_name=marquee.central.example.com
name_server=connor(192.168.112.3)}

```

Syntax Rule	Example
Independent keywords can be listed in any order.	<code>pointer=MS-S display=ati {size=15-inch}</code>
Keywords are not case sensitive.	<code>TIMEZONE=US/Central terminal=sun-cmd</code>
Enclose all dependent keywords in curly braces ({} ) to tie them to their associated independent keyword.	<code>name_service=NIS {domain_name=marquee.central.example.com name_server=connor(192.168.112.3)}</code>
You can optionally enclosed values in single (') or double quotes (").	<code>network_interface='none'</code>
For all keywords except the <code>network_interface</code> keyword, only one instance of a keyword is valid. However, if you specify the keyword more than once, only the first instance of the keyword is used.	<code>name_service=NIS name_service=DNS</code>

## sysidcfg File Keywords

[Table 2–3](#) lists the keywords you can use to configure system information in the `sysidcfg` file.

**TABLE 2–3** Keywords to Use in `sysidcfg`

Configuration Information	Keyword
Keyboard layout and language	<a href="#">“keyboard Keyword” on page 27</a>
Naming service, domain name, name server	<a href="#">“name_service Keyword” on page 28</a>
Network interface, host name, Internet Protocol (IP) address, netmask, DHCP, IPv6	<a href="#">“network_interface Keyword” on page 31</a>
Domain name definition for NFSv4	<a href="#">“nfs4_domain Keyword” on page 36</a>
Root password	<a href="#">“root_password Keyword” on page 37</a>
Security policy	<a href="#">“security_policy Keyword” on page 37</a>
Network security profile	<a href="#">“service_profile Keyword” on page 38</a>
Language in which to display the install program and desktop	<a href="#">“system_locale Keyword” on page 38</a>
Terminal type	<a href="#">“terminal Keyword” on page 39</a>
Time zone	<a href="#">“timezone Keyword” on page 39</a>
Date and time	<a href="#">“timeserver Keyword” on page 39</a>
Auto Registration setup	<a href="#">“auto_reg Keyword” on page 23</a>

The following sections describe the keywords that you can use in the `sysidcfg` file.

## auto\_reg Keyword

Starting with the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release, you can use the `auto_reg` keyword to set up or disable Auto Registration, a feature of Oracle Solaris.

### What Is Auto Registration?

Auto Registration is new in the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release. When you install or upgrade your system, configuration data about your system is, when you reboot, automatically communicated through the existing service tag technology to the Oracle Product Registration System. This service tag data about your system is used, for example, to help Oracle enhance customer support and services. You can learn about service tags at <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/server-storage/solaris/oracle-service-tag-faq-418684.html>.

You can use this same configuration data to create and manage your own inventory of your systems. By registering with your support credentials using one of the registration options below, you have a straightforward way to inventory your systems, by recording and tracking the service tags for the systems and for the software products installed on the systems. For instructions about tracking your registered products, see <https://support.oracle.com/CSP/ui/flash.html>.

You may elect to have your configuration data sent to the Oracle Product Registration System anonymously so that the configuration data sent to Oracle has no link to the name of a customer. You also have the option to disable Auto Registration.

For more information about Auto Registration, see “Auto Registration” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

## auto\_reg Keyword

You can use the `auto_reg` keyword in the `sysidcfg` file prior to a hands-off installation or upgrade to provide your support credentials for Auto Registration, to choose anonymous registration, or to disable Auto Registration. If you do not set up the `sysidcfg` file with these keywords, you are prompted to provide your credentials or to register anonymously during the installation or upgrade.

The following shows the general syntax for the `auto_reg` keyword.

```
auto_reg=[anon |none |noproxy |all |disable ] {
oracle_user=username
oracle_pw=oracle-password
http_proxy_host=hostname
http_proxy_port=port-number
http_proxy_user=proxy-username
http_proxy_pw=proxy-password
}
```

To use this keyword, first specify a basic type of registration by choosing one of the main values: `anon`, `none`, `noproxy`, `all`, or `disable`, as described in the following table. Then, use the following additional keywords to provide specific My Oracle Support credentials and to provide your proxy information for the Auto Registration.

TABLE 2-4 auto\_reg Keywords and Values

Keyword	Values
auto_reg	<p>auto_reg is the primary keyword. Use one of the following values for this keyword to specify the type of Auto Registration that you want to use.</p> <p><b>Anonymous Registration</b> – anon or none Values</p> <p>If you use the <code>anon</code> value or the <code>none</code> value, your service tags are anonymously registered with Oracle. An anonymous registration means that the configuration data sent to Oracle has no link to the name of a customer or a person. If My Oracle Support credentials are provided during the installation, these credentials are ignored and the registration remains anonymous.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If you also want to provide proxy information either in the <code>sysidcfg</code> file or when prompted during the installation or upgrade, use the <code>anon</code> value.</li> <li>■ If you do not want to provide proxy information in the <code>sysidcfg</code> file, use the <code>none</code> value. If you provide proxy information during an installation or upgrade, that proxy information will be ignored.</li> </ul> <p><b>Register With Your Support Credentials</b> – noproxy or all Values</p> <p>If you use the <code>noproxy</code> value or the <code>all</code> value, your service tags are registered with Oracle using your My Oracle Support credentials when you reboot after installing or upgrading your system. You need to provide your My Oracle Support credentials either in the <code>sysidcfg</code> file or when prompted during the installation or upgrade.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If you also want to provide proxy information either in the <code>sysidcfg</code> file or when prompted during the installation or upgrade, use the <code>all</code> value.</li> <li>■ If you do not want to provide proxy information in the <code>sysidcfg</code> file, use the <code>noproxy</code> value. If you provide proxy information during an installation or upgrade, that proxy information will be ignored.</li> </ul> <p><b>Disable Auto Registration</b> – disable</p> <p>If you use the <code>disable</code> value, Auto Registration is disabled. Once it is disabled, you would need to use the <code>regadm</code> command to re-enable Auto Registration. For more information, see the <code>regadm(1M)</code> man page.</p> <p>For examples for each of these values, see the following sections.</p>
Secondary keywords:	Use the following keywords and values within the main <code>auto_reg</code> keyword to provide either your My Oracle Support credentials or your proxy information.
oracle_user	<p><code>username</code> – Provide your My Oracle Support username. For example, <code>oracle_user=myusername</code>.</p>



TABLE 2-4 auto\_reg Keywords and Values (Continued)

Keyword	Values
oracle_pw	oracle_password – Provide your My Oracle Support password in plain, not encrypted, text. For example, oracle_pw=j32js94jrjsw.
http_proxy_host	hostname – Provide your proxy hostname, for example, http_proxy_host=sss.com.
http_proxy_port	port_number – Provide your proxy port, for example, http_proxy_port=8050.
http_proxy_user	proxy_username – Provide your proxy username, for example, http_proxy_user=proxyusername.
http_proxy_pw	proxy_password – Provide your proxy password in plain, not encrypted, text, for example, http_proxy_pw=sej47875WSjs.

This information is also provided in the sysidcfg(4) man page.

## Anonymous Registration Examples

Use either the anon or none values for anonymous registrations. An anonymous registration means that the configuration data sent to Oracle has no link to the name of a customer or a person. If My Oracle Support credentials are provided during the installation, these credentials are ignored and the registration remains anonymous.

To include proxy information, see the anon value. If you don't want to include proxy information, use the none value.

In the following example, the anon value specifies that your service tags are anonymously registered with Oracle. And, you are expected to provide proxy information either in the sysidcfg file, as shown in the following example, or when prompted during the installation or upgrade.

```
auto_reg=anon {
http_proxy_host=sss.com
http_proxy_port=8040
http_proxy_user=myproxyusername
http_proxy_pw=si329jehId
}
```

In the following example, the none value specifies that your service tags are anonymously registered with Oracle, and that you do not want to include proxy information. If you do provide proxy information during an installation or upgrade, that proxy information will be ignored.

```
auto_reg=none
```

## Registration Using Support Credentials Examples

Use the `noproxy` value or the `all` value to register your service tags with Oracle using your My Oracle Support credentials when you reboot after installing or upgrading your system.

To include proxy information, see the `all` value. If you don't want to include proxy information, use the `noproxy` value. See the following examples.

In the following example, the `all` value specifies that your service tags are registered with Oracle using your My Oracle Support credentials when you reboot after installing or upgrading your system. You need to provide your My Oracle Support credentials as shown in this example, or when prompted during the installation or upgrade. Since you used an `all` value, you also must provide your proxy information as shown in the following example, or when prompted during the installation or upgrade.

```
auto_reg=all {
  oracle_user=myusername
  oracle_pw=ajsi349EKS987
  http_proxy_host=sss.com
  http_proxy_port=8030
  http_proxy_user=myproxyusername
  http_proxy_pw=ajsi2934IEls
}
```

In the following example, the `noproxy` value specifies that your service tags are registered with Oracle using your My Oracle Support credentials when you reboot after installing or upgrading your system. You need to provide your My Oracle Support credentials as shown below, or when prompted during the installation or upgrade. However, since you used the `noproxy` value, you need not provide proxy information. If you do provide proxy information during the installation or upgrade, that information is ignored.

```
auto_reg=noproxy {
  oracle_user=myusername
  oracle_pw=sie7894KEdjs2
}
```

## Disabling Auto Registration Example

In the following example, the `disable` value specifies that Auto Registration is disabled. You would need to use the `regadm` command to re-enable Auto Registration. For more information, see the `regadm(1M)` man page.

```
auto_reg=disable
```

## keyboard Keyword

The `sysidkbd` tool configures your USB language and its corresponding keyboard layout.

The following procedure occurs:

- If the keyboard is self-identifying, the keyboard language and layout automatically configures during installation.
- If the keyboard is not self-identifying, the `sysidkbd` tool provides you with a list of supported keyboard layouts during installation, so that you can select a layout for keyboard configuration.

---

**Note** – PS/2 keyboards are not self-identifying. You will be asked to select the keyboard layout during the installation.

---

You can configure the keyboard language and its corresponding keyboard layout information by using the keyboard keyword. Each language has its own keyboard layout. Use the following syntax to select a language and its corresponding layout.

```
keyboard=keyboard_layout
```

For example, this entry sets the keyboard language and its corresponding keyboard layout for the German language:

```
keyboard=German
```

The value provided for *keyboard\_layout* must be a valid value. Otherwise, an interactive response is required during installation. The valid *keyboard\_layout* strings are defined in the `/usr/share/lib/keytables/type_6/kbd_layouts` file.

---

**SPARC only** – Previously, the USB keyboard assumed a self-identifying value of 1 during the installation. Therefore, all of the keyboards that were not self-identifying always configured for a U.S. English keyboard layout during installation.

---

If the keyboard is not self-identifying and you want to prevent being prompted during your JumpStart installation, select the keyboard language in your `sysidcfg` file. For JumpStart installations, the default is for the U.S. English language. To select another language and its corresponding keyboard layout, set the keyboard entry in your `sysidcfg` file as in the example provided above.

For further information, see the `sysidcfg(4)` and `sysidtool(1M)` man pages.

## name\_service Keyword

You can use the `name_service` keyword to configure the naming service, the domain name, and the name server for the system. The following sample shows the general syntax for the `name_service` keyword.

```
name_service=name-service {domain_name=domain-name
                           name_server=name-server
                           optional-keyword=value}
```

Choose only one value for `name_service`. Include all or none of the `domain_name`, `name_server`, or optional keywords, as needed. If no keywords are used, omit the curly braces {}.

---

**Note** – The `name_service` option in the `sysidcfg` file automatically sets the naming service during installation of the Oracle Solaris OS. This setting overrides SMF services that were previously set up for `site.xml`. Therefore, you might need to reset your name service after installation.

---

The following sections describe the keyword syntax to configure the system to use a specific naming service.

## NIS Syntax for name\_service Keyword

Use the following syntax to configure the system to use the NIS naming service.

```
name_service=NIS {domain_name=domain-name
                  name_server=hostname(ip-address)}
```

<i>domain-name</i>	Specifies the domain name
<i>hostname</i>	Specifies the host name of the name server
<i>ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of the name server

### EXAMPLE 2-4 Specifying a NIS Server With the name\_service Keyword

The following example specifies a NIS server with the domain name `west.example.com`. The server's host name is `timber`, and the server IP address is `192.168.2.1`.

```
name_service=NIS {domain_name=west.example.com
                  name_server=timber(192.168.2.1)}
```

For more information about the NIS name service, see [System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services \(DNS, NIS, and LDAP\)](#).

## NIS+ Syntax for name\_service Keyword

Use the following syntax to configure the system to use the NIS name service.

```
name_service=NIS+ {domain_name=domain-name
                  name_server=hostname(ip-address)}
```

*domain-name* Specifies the domain name

*hostname* Specifies the host name of the name server

*ip-address* Specifies the IP address of the name server

### EXAMPLE 2-5 Specifying a NIS+ Server With the name\_service Keyword

The following example specifies a NIS+ server with the domain name `west.example.com`. The server's host name is `timber`, and the server IP address is `192.168.2.1`.

```
name_service=NIS+ {domain_name=west.example.com
                  name_server=timber(192.168.2.1)}
```

For more information about the NIS+ name service, see [System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services \(NIS+\)](#).

## DNS Syntax for name\_service Keyword

Use the following syntax to configure the system to use DNS.

```
name_service=DNS {domain_name=domain-name
                  name_server=ip-address, ip-address, ip-address
                  search=domain-name, domain-name, domain-name,
                       domain-name, domain-name, domain-name}
```

*domain\_name=domain-name* Specifies the domain name.

*name\_server=ip-address* Specifies the IP address of the DNS server. You can specify up to three IP addresses as values for the `name_server` keyword.

*search=domain-name* (Optional) Specifies additional domains to search for naming service information. You can specify up to six domain names to search. The total length of each search entry cannot exceed 250 characters.

### EXAMPLE 2-6 Specifying a DNS Server With the name\_service Keyword

The following example specifies a DNS server with the domain name `west.example.com`. The server IP addresses are `10.0.1.10` and `10.0.1.20`. `example.com` and `east.example.com` are listed as additional domains to search for naming service information.

**EXAMPLE 2-6** Specifying a DNS Server With the name\_service Keyword (Continued)

```
name_service=DNS {domain_name=west.example.com
                  name_server=10.0.1.10,10.0.1.20
                  search=example.com,east.example.com}
```

For more information about the DNS name service, see *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*.

**LDAP Syntax for name\_service Keyword**

Use the following syntax to configure the system to use LDAP.

```
name_service=LDAP {domain_name=domain_name
                   profile=profile_name profile_server=ip_address
                   proxy_dn="proxy_bind_dn" proxy_password=password}
```

*domain\_name* Specifies the domain name of the LDAP server.

*profile\_name* Specifies the name of the LDAP profile you want to use to configure the system.

*ip\_address* Specifies the IP address of the LDAP profile server.

*proxy\_bind\_dn* (Optional) Specifies the proxy bind distinguished name. You must enclose the *proxy\_bind\_dn* value in double quotes.

*password* (Optional) Specifies the client proxy password.

**EXAMPLE 2-7** Specifying an LDAP Server With the name\_service Keyword

The following example specifies an LDAP server with the following configuration information.

- The domain name is west.example.com.
- The installation program uses the LDAP profile that is named default to configure the system.
- The IP address of the LDAP server is 172.31.2.1.
- The proxy bind distinguished name includes the following information.
  - The common name for the entry is proxyagent.
  - The organizational unit is profile.
  - The proxy domain includes the west, example, and com domain components.
- The proxy password is password.

```
name_service=LDAP {domain_name=west.example.com
                   profile=default
                   profile_server=172.31.2.1
                   proxy_dn="cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,
```

**EXAMPLE 2-7** Specifying an LDAP Server With the `name_service` Keyword (Continued)

```
dc=west,dc=example,dc=com"
proxy_password=password}
```

For more information about how to use LDAP, see *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*.

## network\_interface Keyword

Use the `network_interface` keyword to perform the following tasks.

- Specify a host name
- Specify an IP address
- Specify the default router address
- Specify a netmask value
- Use DHCP to configure the network interface
- Enable IPv6 on the network interface

The following sections describe how to use the `network_interface` keyword to configure the system interfaces.

### Syntax for Nonnetworked Systems

To turn off networking for the system, set the `network_interface` value to `none`. For example:

```
network_interface=none
```

### Syntax for Configuring a Single Interface

You can use the `network_interface` keyword to configure a single interface in the following ways.

- **With DHCP** – You can use a DHCP server on your network to configure the network interface. For more information on how to use a DHCP server during your installation, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)” on page 47](#).

To use the DHCP server to configure a single interface on the system, use the following syntax for the `network_interface` keyword.

```
network_interface=PRIMARY or value
                    {dhcp protocol_ipv6=yes-or-no}
```

**PRIMARY** Instructs the installation program to configure the first up, non-loopback interface that is found on the system. The order is the same as the order that is displayed with the

	<code>ifconfig</code> command. If no interfaces are up, then the first non-loopback interface is used. If no non-loopback interfaces are found, then the system is nonnetworked.
<i>value</i>	Instructs the installation program to configure a specific interface, such as <code>hme0</code> or <code>eri1</code> .
<code>protocol_ipv6=yes-or-no</code>	Instructs the installation program to configure the system to use either IPv6 or to not use IPv6.
	For WAN boot installations, you must set the value of <code>protocol_ipv6=no</code> .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Without DHCP</b> – If you do not want to use DHCP to configure the network interface, you can specify the configuration information in the <code>sysidcfg</code> file. To instruct the installation program to configure a single interface on the system without using DHCP, use the following syntax.</li> </ul>	
<code>network_interface=PRIMARY</code> or <i>value</i>	<pre> {hostname=<i>host_name</i>  default_route=<i>ip_address</i>  ip_address=<i>ip_address</i>  netmask=<i>netmask</i>  protocol_ipv6=<i>yes_or_no</i>} </pre>
PRIMARY	Instructs the installation program to configure the first up, non-loopback interface that is found on the system. The order is the same as the order that is displayed with the <code>ifconfig</code> command. If no interfaces are up, then the first non-loopback interface is used. If no non-loopback interfaces are found, then the system is not networked.
	<hr/> <p><b>Note</b> – Do not use the PRIMARY keyword value if you want to configure multiple interfaces.</p> <hr/>
<i>value</i>	Instructs the installation program to configure a specific interface, such as <code>hme0</code> or <code>eri1</code> .
<code>hostname=<i>host_name</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the host name of the system.
<code>default_route=<i>ip_address</i></code> or NONE	(Optional) Specifies the IP address of the default router. If you want the installation program to detect the router by using the ICMP router discovery protocol, omit this keyword.



---

**Note** – If the installation program cannot detect the router, you are prompted for the router information during the installation.

---

<code>ip_address=ip_address</code>	(Optional) Specifies the IP address of the system.
<code>netmask=netmask</code>	(Optional) Specifies the netmask value for the system.
<code>protocol_ipv6=yes_or_no</code>	(Optional) Instructs the installation program to configure the system to either use IPv6 or to not use IPv6.

---

**Note** – To perform an unattended custom JumpStart installation, you must specify a value for the `protocol_ipv6` keyword.

For WAN boot installations, you must set the value of `protocol_ipv6=no`.

---

Include any combination or none of the `hostname`, `ip_address`, and `netmask` keywords, as needed. If you do not use any of these keywords, omit the curly braces (`{}`).

**EXAMPLE 2-8** Configuring a Single Interface By Using DHCP With the `network_interface` Keyword

The following example instructs the installation program to use DHCP to configure the `eri0` network interface. IPv6 support is not enabled.

```
network_interface=eri0 {dhcp protocol_ipv6=no}
```

**EXAMPLE 2-9** Configuring a Single Interface By Specifying Configuration Information With the `network_interface` Keyword

The following example configures the interface `eri0` with the following settings.

- The host name is set to `host1`.
- The IP address is set to `172.31.88.100`.
- The netmask is set to `255.255.255.0`.
- IPv6 support is not enabled on the interface.

```
network_interface=eri0 {hostname=host1 ip_address=172.31.88.100
netmask=255.255.255.0 protocol_ipv6=no}
```

## Syntax for Configuring Multiple Interfaces

You can configure multiple network interfaces in your `sysidcfg` file. For each interface that you want to configure, include a `network_interface` entry in the `sysidcfg` file.

You can use the `network_interface` keyword to configure multiple interfaces in the following ways.

- With DHCP** – You can use a DHCP server on your network to configure a network interface. For more information on how to use a DHCP server during your installation, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) on page 47.

To use the DHCP server to configure a network interface on the system, use the following syntax for the `network_interface` keyword.

```
network_interface=value {primary
                        dhcp protocol_ipv6=yes-or-no}
value                  Instructs the installation program to configure a specific
                        interface, such as hme0 or eri1.
primary                (Optional) Specifies value as the primary interface.
protocol_ipv6=yes-or-no Instructs the installation program to configure the system to
                        either use IPv6 or to not use IPv6.
```

---

**Note** – For WAN boot installations, you must set the value of `protocol_ipv6=no`.

---

- Without DHCP** – If you do not want to use DHCP to configure the network interface, you can specify the configuration information in the `sysidcfg` file. To instruct the installation program to configure multiple interfaces without using DHCP, use the following syntax.

```
network_interface=value {primary hostname=host_name
                        default_route=ip_address or NONE
                        ip_address=ip_address
                        netmask=netmask
                        protocol_ipv6=yes_or_no}
value                  Instructs the installation program to configure a
                        specific interface, such as hme0 or eri1.
primary                (Optional) Specifies value as the primary
                        interface.
hostname=host_name    (Optional) Specifies the host name of the system.
default_route=ip_address or NONE (Optional) Specifies the IP address of the default
                        router. If you want the installation program to
```

detect the router by using the ICMP router discovery protocol, omit this keyword.

If you configure multiple interfaces in the sysidcfg file, set `default_route=NONE` for each secondary interface that does not use a static default route.

---

**Note** – If the installation program cannot detect the router, you are prompted for the router information during the installation.

---

`ip_address=ip_address`

(Optional) Specifies the IP address of the system.

`netmask=netmask`

(Optional) Specifies the netmask value for the system.

`protocol_ipv6=yes_or_no`

(Optional) Instructs the installation program to configure the system to either use IPv6 or to not use IPv6.

---

**Note** – To perform an unattended custom JumpStart installation, you must specify a value for the `protocol_ipv6` keyword.

For WAN boot installations, you must set the value of `protocol_ipv6=no`.

---

Include any combination or none of the `hostname`, `ip_address`, and `netmask` keywords, as needed. If you do not use any of these keywords, omit the curly braces (`{}`).

In the same `sysidcfg` file, you can use DHCP to configure certain interfaces, while also specifying the configuration information for other interfaces in the `sysidcfg` file.

#### EXAMPLE 2-10 Configuring Multiple Interfaces With the `network_interface` Keyword

In the following example, the network interfaces `eri0` and `eri1` are configured in the following way.

- `eri0` is configured by using the DHCP server. IPv6 support is not enabled on `eri0`.
- `eri1` is the primary network interface. The host name is set to `host1`, and the IP address is set to `172.31.88.100`. The netmask is set to `255.255.255.0`. IPv6 support is not enabled on `eri1`.

**EXAMPLE 2-10** Configuring Multiple Interfaces With the `network_interface` Keyword (Continued)

```
network_interface=eri0 {dhcp protocol_ipv6=no}
network_interface=eri1 {primary hostname=host1
                        ip_address=172.146.88.100
                        netmask=255.255.255.0
                        protocol_ipv6=no}
```

**nfs4\_domain Keyword**

To prevent being asked to specify an NFSv4 domain name during installation, use the `nfs4_domain` keyword in the `sysidcfg` file. This keyword suppresses selection of a domain name during the installation process. Use the following syntax:

`nfs4_domain=dynamic` or *custom\_domain\_name*

`dynamic`

This reserved keyword dynamically derives the NFSv4 domain name, based on naming services configuration. For example:

```
nfs4_domain=dynamic
```

This example enables the domain name to be derived by the naming service.

The reserved keyword, `dynamic`, is not case sensitive.

---

**Note** – By default, NFSv4 uses a domain name that is automatically derived from the system's naming services. This domain name is sufficient for most configurations. In a few cases, mount points that cross domain boundaries can cause files to appear to be owned by “nobody” because no common domain name exists. To prevent this situation, you can override the default domain name and select a custom domain name.

---

*custom\_domain\_name*

This value overrides the default domain name.

This value must be a valid custom domain name. A valid domain name is composed of a combination of alphanumeric characters, dots, underscores, and dashes only. The first character must be an alphabetical character. For example:

```
nfs4_domain=example.com
```

This example sets the value that is used by the `nfsmapid` daemon to be *example.com*. This selection overrides the default domain name.

---

**Note** – In previous releases, scripts enabled users to avoid being prompted for the NFSv4 domain name during installation.

For JumpStart installations in the Oracle Solaris 10 OS, you could use the workaround JumpStart sample script, `set_nfs4_domain`, to suppress the NFSv4 prompt during installation. This script is no longer required. Use the `sysidcfg` keyword, `nfs4_domain`, instead.

In prior releases, the `/etc/.NFS4inst_state.domain` file was created by the `sysidnfs4` program. This file would suppress the prompt for an NFSv4 domain name during installation. This file is no longer created. Use the `sysidcfg` keyword, `nfs4_domain`, instead.

---

### root\_password Keyword

You can specify the root password to the system in the `sysidcfg` file. To specify the root password, use the `root_password` keyword with the following syntax.

```
root_password=encrypted-password
```

*encrypted-password* is the encrypted password as it appears in the `/etc/shadow` file.

### security\_policy Keyword

You can use the `security_policy` keyword in your `sysidcfg` file to configure your system to use the Kerberos network authentication protocol. If you want to configure the system to use Kerberos, use the following syntax.

```
security_policy=kerberos {default_realm=FQDN
                           admin_server=FQDN kdc=FQDN1, FQDN2, FQDN3}
```

*FQDN* specifies the fully qualified domain name of the Kerberos default realm, the administration server, or key distribution center (KDC). You must specify at least one, but no more than three, key distribution centers.

If you do not want to set the security policy for the system, set `security_policy=NONE`.

For more information about the Kerberos network authentication protocol, see [System Administration Guide: Security Services](#).

**EXAMPLE 2-11** Configuring the System to Use Kerberos With the `security_policy` Keyword

This example configures the system to use Kerberos with the following information.

- The Kerberos default realm is `example.com`.
- The Kerberos administration server is `krbadmin.example.com`.
- The two key distribution centers are `kdc1.example.com` and `kdc2.example.com`.

**EXAMPLE 2-11** Configuring the System to Use Kerberos With the `security_policy` Keyword  
(Continued)

```
security_policy=kerberos
    {default_realm=example.COM
      admin_server=krbadmin.example.com
      kdc=kdc1.example.com,
      kdc2.example.com}
```

## **service\_profile** Keyword

You can use the `service_profile` keyword to install a more secure system by restricting network services. This security option is available only for initial installations. An upgrade maintains all previously set services.

Use one of the following syntaxes to set this keyword.

```
service_profile=limited_net
```

```
service_profile=open
```

`limited_net` specifies that all network services, except for Secure Shell, are either disabled or constrained to respond to local requests only. After installation, any individual network service can be enabled by using the `svcadm` and `svccfg` commands.

`open` specifies that no network service changes are made during installation.

If the `service_profile` keyword is not present in the `sysidcfg` file, no changes are made to the status of the network services during installation.

The network services can be enabled after installation by using the `netservices open` command or by enabling individual services by using SMF commands. See “[Revising Security Settings After Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

For further information about limiting network security during installation, see “[Planning Network Security](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*. See also the following man pages.

- `netservices(1M)`
- `svcadm(1M)`
- `svccfg(1M)` commands

## **system\_locale** Keyword

You can use the `system_locale` keyword to specify the language in which to display the install program and desktop. Use the following syntax to specify a locale.

```
system_locale=locale
```

*locale* specifies the language that you want the system to use to display the installation panels and screens. For a list of valid locale values, see the `/usr/lib/locale` directory or [International Language Environments Guide](#).

## terminal Keyword

You can use the `terminal` keyword to specify the terminal type for the system. Use the following syntax to specify the terminal type.

```
terminal=terminal_type
```

*terminal\_type* specifies the terminal type for the system. For a list of valid terminal values, see the subdirectories in the `/usr/share/lib/terminfo` directory.

## timezone Keyword

You can set the time zone for the system with the `timezone` keyword. Use the following syntax.

```
timezone=timezone
```

In the previous example, *timezone* specifies the time zone value for the system. The directories and files in the `/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo` directory provide the valid time zone values. The *timezone* value is the name of the path relative to the `/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo` directory. You can also specify any valid Olson time zone.

### EXAMPLE 2-12 Configuring the System Time Zone With the `timezone` Keyword

In the following example, the system time zone is set to mountain standard time in the United States.

```
timezone=US/Mountain
```

The installation program configures the system to use the time zone information in `/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo/US/Mountain`.

## timeserver Keyword

You can use the `timeserver` keyword to specify the system that sets the date and time on the system you want to install.

Choose one of the following methods to set the `timeserver` keyword.

- To configure the system to serve as its own time server, set `timeserver=localhost`. If you specify `localhost` as the time server, the system's time is assumed to be correct.

- To specify another system as the time server, specify either the host name or the IP address of the time server with the `timeserver` keyword. Use the following syntax.

`timeserver=hostname or ip-address`

*hostname* is the host name of the time server system. *ip-address* specifies the IP address of the time server.

## SPARC: Preconfiguring Power Management Information

You can use the *Power Management* software that is provided in the Oracle Solaris OS to automatically save the state of a system and turn it off after it is idle for 30 minutes. When you install the current Oracle Solaris release on a system that complies with version 2 of the EPA's Energy Star guidelines, for example a Sun4U system, the Power Management software is installed by default. If you install with the Oracle Solaris installation program GUI, the installation program prompts you to enable or disable the Power Management software. The Oracle Solaris text installer prompts you to enable or disable the Power Management software after the installation is complete and the system reboots.

---

**Note** – If your system has Energy Star version 3 or later, you are not prompted for this information.

---

If you are performing interactive installations, you cannot preconfigure the Power Management information and avoid the prompt. However, by using a custom JumpStart installation, you can preconfigure the Power Management information by using a finish script to create an `/autoshtutdown` or `/noautoshtutdown` file on the system. When the system reboots, the `/autoshtutdown` file enables Power Management and the `/noautoshtutdown` file disables Power Management.

For example, the following line in a finish script enables the Power Management software and prevents the display of the prompt after the system reboots.

```
touch /a/autoshtutdown
```

Finish scripts are described in “Creating Finish Scripts” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.



# Preconfiguring With a Naming Service or DHCP

---

This chapter describes procedures about preconfiguring system information with a naming service or DHCP. This chapter contains the following sections:

- “Choosing a Naming Service” on page 41
- “Preconfiguring With the Naming Service” on page 43
- “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47

## Choosing a Naming Service

You can choose one of the following ways to preconfigure system configuration information. You can add the system configuration information to any of the following.

- A `sysidcfg` file on a remote system or diskette

---

**Note** – The `name_service` option in the `sysidcfg` file automatically sets the naming service during installation of the Oracle Solaris OS. This setting overrides SMF services previously setup for `site.xml`. Therefore, you might need to reset your name service after installation.

---

- The naming service database available at your site
- If your site uses DHCP, you can also preconfigure some system information in the site DHCP server. For more information about how to use a DHCP server to preconfigure system information, see “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47.

Use the following table to determine whether to use a `sysidcfg` file or a naming service database to preconfigure system configuration information.

TABLE 3-1 Methods to Preconfigure System Configuration Information

Preconfigurable System Information	Preconfigurable With the <code>sysidcfg</code> File?	Preconfigurable With the Naming Service?
Naming service	Yes	Yes
Domain name	Yes	No
Name server	Yes	No
Network interface	Yes	No
Host name	Yes	Yes
Internet Protocol (IP) address	Yes	Yes
	Because this information is system specific, edit the naming service rather than create a different <code>sysidcfg</code> file for each system.	
Netmask	Yes	No
DHCP	Yes	No
IPv6	Yes	No
Default route	Yes	No
Root password	Yes	No
Security policy	Yes	No
Language (locale) in which to display the install program and desktop	Yes	Yes, if NIS or NIS+ No, if DNS or LDAP
Terminal type	Yes	No
Time zone	Yes	Yes
Date and time	Yes	Yes
Web proxy	No	No
	You can configure this information with the Oracle Solaris installation program, but not through the <code>sysidcfg</code> file or the naming service.	
x86: Monitor type	Yes	No

TABLE 3-1 Methods to Preconfigure System Configuration Information (Continued)

Preconfigurable System Information	Preconfigurable With the <code>sysidcfg</code> File?	Preconfigurable With the Naming Service?
x86: Keyboard language, keyboard layout	Yes	No
x86: Graphics card, color depth, display resolution, screen size	Yes	No
x86: Pointing device, number of buttons, IRQ level	Yes	No
SPARC: Power Management (autoshtutdown)	No	No

You cannot preconfigure Power Management through the `sysidcfg` file or the naming service. “SPARC: Preconfiguring Power Management Information” on page 40 contains details.

## Preconfiguring With the Naming Service

The following table provides a high-level overview of the naming service databases that you need to edit and populate to preconfigure system information.

System Information to Preconfigure	Naming Service Database
Host name and Internet Protocol (IP) address	<code>hosts</code>
Date and time	<code>hosts</code> . Specify the <code>timehost</code> alias next to the host name of the system that will provide the date and time for the systems that are being installed.
Time zone	<code>timezone</code>
Netmask	<code>netmasks</code>

You cannot preconfigure the locale for a system with the DNS or LDAP name service. If you use the NIS or NIS+ name service, follow the procedure below to use your naming service to preconfigure the locale for a system.

---

**Note** – In order to successfully preconfigure your system locale by using NIS or NIS+, the following requirements must be met:

- You must boot the system from the network by using the following command:

```
ok boot net
```

You can use options with this command. See details in Step 2 of the “[SPARC: To Install the Client Over the Network \(DVD\)](#)” on page 79 procedure.

- The NIS or NIS+ server must be available to access during the installation.

If these requirements are fulfilled, the installer uses the preconfigured settings and does not prompt for the locale during the installation. If either requirement is not fulfilled, the installer prompts for your locale information during the installation.

---

- “[To Preconfigure the Locale Using NIS](#)” on page 44
- “[To Preconfigure the Locale Using NIS+](#)” on page 46

## ▼ To Preconfigure the Locale Using NIS

### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role on the name server.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

### 2 Change `/var/yp/Makefile` to add the locale map.

#### a. Insert this shell procedure after the last *variable.time* shell procedure.

```
locale.time: $(DIR)/locale
-@if [ -f $(DIR)/locale ]; then \
  sed -e "/^#/d" -e s/#.*$$// $(DIR)/locale \
  | awk '{for (i = 2; i<=NF; i++) print $$i, $$0}' \
  | $(MAKEDBM) - $(YPDBDIR)/$(DOM)/locale.byname; \
  touch locale.time; \
  echo "updated locale"; \
  if [ ! $(NOPUSH) ]; then \
    $(YPPUSH) locale.byname; \
    echo "pushed locale"; \
  else \
    ; \
  fi \
else \
  echo "couldn't find $(DIR)/locale"; \
fi
```

**b. Find the string `all:` and, at the end of the list of variables, insert the word `locale`.**

```
all: passwd group hosts ethers networks rpc services protocols \
    netgroup bootparams aliases publickey netid netmasks c2secure \
    timezone auto.master auto.home locale
```

**c. Near the end of the file, after the last entry of its type, insert the string `locale: locale.time` on a new line.**

```
passwd: passwd.time
group: group.time
hosts: hosts.time
ethers: ethers.time
networks: networks.time
rpc: rpc.time
services: services.time
protocols: protocols.time
netgroup: netgroup.time
bootparams: bootparams.time
aliases: aliases.time
publickey: publickey.time
netid: netid.time
passwd.adjunct: passwd.adjunct.time
group.adjunct: group.adjunct.time
netmasks: netmasks.time
timezone: timezone.time
auto.master: auto.master.time
auto.home: auto.home.time
locale: locale.time
```

**d. Save the file.****3 Create the file `/etc/locale` and make one entry for each domain or specific system:****■ Enter `locale domain_name`.**

For example, the following entry specifies that French is the default language that is used in the `example.com` domain:

```
fr example.com
```

---

**Note** – *International Language Environments Guide* contains a list of valid locales.

---

**■ Or, enter `locale system_name`.**

The following example specifies that Belgian French is the default locale that is used by a system named `myhost`:

```
fr_BE myhost
```

---

**Note** – Locales are available on the Oracle Solaris DVD or Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD.

---

**4 Make the maps:**

```
# cd /var/yp; make
```

Systems that are specified by domain or individually in the locale map are now set up to use the default locale. The default locale that you specified is used during installation and by the desktop after the system is rebooted.

### More Information Continuing the Installation

If you plan to use the NIS name service in an installation over the network, you need to set up an installation server and add the system as an installation client. For more information, see [Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network \(Overview\)”](#).

If you plan to use the NIS name service in a custom JumpStart installation, you need to create a profile and a `rules.ok` file. For more information, see [Chapter 2, “Custom JumpStart \(Overview\)”](#), in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

**See Also** For more information about the NIS name service, see [Part III, “NIS Setup and Administration,”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*.

## ▼ To Preconfigure the Locale Using NIS+

The following procedure assumes the NIS+ domain is set up. Setting up the NIS+ domain is documented in the *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*.

**1 Log in to a name server as superuser or as a user in the NIS+ administration group.**

**2 Create the locale table:**

```
# nistbladm -D access=og=rmcd,nw=r -c locale_tbl name=SI,nogw=
locale=,nogw= comment=,nogw= locale.org_dir.'nisdefaults -d'
```

**3 Add needed entries to the locale.**

```
# nistbladm -a name=name locale=locale comment=comment
locale.org_dir.'nisdefaults -d'
```

*name* Either the domain name or a specific system name for which you want to preconfigure a default locale.

*locale* The locale you want to install on the system and use on the desktop after the system is rebooted. *International Language Environments Guide* contains a list of valid locales.

*comment* The comment field. Use double quotation marks to begin and end comments that are longer than one word.

---

**Note** – Locales are available on the Oracle Solaris DVD or Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD.

---

Systems that are specified by domain or individually in the `locale` table are now set up to use the default locale. The default locale you specified is used during installation and by the desktop after the system is rebooted.

### **More Information** Continuing the Installation

If you plan to use the NIS+ name service in an installation over the network, you need to set up an installation server and add the system as an installation client. For more information, see [Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network \(Overview\)”](#).

If you plan to use the NIS+ name service in a custom JumpStart installation, you need to create a profile and a `rules.ok` file. For more information, see [Chapter 2, “Custom JumpStart \(Overview\)”](#), in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

**See Also** For more information about the NIS+ name service, see *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (NIS+)*.

## **Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)**

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) enables host systems in a TCP/IP network to be configured automatically for the network as they boot. DHCP uses a client and server mechanism. Servers store and manage configuration information for clients, and provide that information on a client's request. The information includes the client's IP address and information about network services available to the client.

A primary benefit of DHCP is its ability to manage IP address assignments through leasing. Leasing allows IP addresses to be reclaimed when not in use and reassigned to other clients. This ability enables a site to use a smaller pool of IP address than would be needed if all clients were assigned a permanent address.

You can use DHCP to install the Oracle Solaris OS on certain client systems on your network. All SPARC based systems that are supported by the Oracle Solaris OS and x86 based systems that meet the hardware requirements for running the Oracle Solaris OS can use this feature.

The following task map shows the high-level tasks that must be performed to enable clients to obtain installation parameters by using DHCP.

TABLE 3-2 Task Map: Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service

Task	Description	Instructions
Set up an install server.	Set up a Oracle Solaris server to support clients that must install the Oracle Solaris OS from the network.	Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network (Overview)”
Set up client systems for Oracle Solaris installation over the network by using DHCP.	Use <code>add_install_client -d</code> to add DHCP network installation support for a class of client (of a certain machine type, for example) or a particular client ID.	Using Oracle Solaris DVD: “Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image” on page 73  Using Oracle Solaris CD: “Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image” on page 97  <code>add_install_client(1M)</code>
Prepare your network to use the DHCP service.	Decide how you want to configure your DHCP server.	Chapter 13, “Planning for DHCP Service (Tasks),” in <i>System Administration Guide: IP Services</i>
Configure the DHCP server.	Use DHCP Manager to configure your DHCP server	Chapter 14, “Configuring the DHCP Service (Tasks),” in <i>System Administration Guide: IP Services</i>
Create DHCP options for installation parameters and macros that include the options.	Use DHCP Manager or <code>dhtadm</code> to create new Vendor options and macros that the DHCP server can use to pass installation information to the clients.	“Creating DHCP Options and Macros for Oracle Solaris Installation Parameters” on page 48

## Creating DHCP Options and Macros for Oracle Solaris Installation Parameters

When you add clients with the `add_install_client -d` script on the install server, the script reports DHCP configuration information to standard output. This information can be used when you create the options and macros that are needed to pass network installation information to clients.

You can customize the options and macros in your DHCP service to perform the following types of installations.



- **Class-specific installations** – You can instruct the DHCP service to perform a network installation for all clients of a specific class. For example, you can define a DHCP macro that performs the same installation on all Sun Blade systems on the network. Use the output of the `add_install_client -d` command to set up a class-specific installation.
- **Network-specific installations** – You can instruct the DHCP service to perform a network installation for all clients in a specific network. For example, you can define a DHCP macro that performs the same installation on all systems in the 192.168.2 network.
- **Client-specific installations** – You can instruct the DHCP service to perform a network installation for a client with a specific Ethernet address. For example, you can define a DHCP macro that performs a specific installation on the client with the Ethernet address 00:07:e9:04:4a:bf. Use the output of the `add_install_client -d -e ethernet_address` command to set up a client-specific installation.

For more information on setting up clients to use a DHCP server for a network installation, see the following procedures.

- For network installations that use DVD media, see [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image”](#) on page 73.
- For network installations that use CD media, see [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image”](#) on page 97.

## DHCP Options and Macro Values

To install DHCP clients from the network, you must create Vendor category options to pass information that is needed to install the Oracle Solaris OS. The following tables describe common DHCP options that you can use to install a DHCP client.

- You can use the standard DHCP options that are listed in [Table 3–3](#) to configure and install x86 based systems. These options are not platform specific, and can be used to install the Oracle Solaris OS on a variety of x86 based systems. Use these options to install the Oracle Solaris 10 release on x86 based systems by using DHCP. For a complete list of standard options, see `dhcp_inittab(4)`.
- [Table 3–4](#) lists options that you can use to install Oracle client systems. The vendor client classes that are listed in this table determine what classes of client can use the option. Vendor client classes that are listed here are examples only. You should specify client classes that indicate the actual clients in your network that you need to install from the network. See [“Working With DHCP Options \(Task Map\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: IP Services* for information about how to determine a client's vendor client class.

For detailed information on DHCP options, see [“DHCP Option Information”](#) in *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.

TABLE 3-3 Values for Standard DHCP Options

Option Name	Code	Data Type	Granularity	Maximum	Description
BootFile	N/A	ASCII	1	1	Path to the client's boot file
BootSrvA	N/A	IP address	1	1	IP address of boot server
DNSdomain	15	ASCII	1	0	DNS domain name
DNSserv	6	IP address	1	0	List of DNS name servers
NISdomain	40	ASCII	1	0	NIS domain name
NISservs	41	IP address	1	0	IP address of NIS server
NIS+dom	64	ASCII	1	0	NIS+ domain name
NIS+serv	65	IP address	1	0	IP address of NIS+ server
Router	3	IP address	1	0	IP addresses of network routers

TABLE 3-4 Values for Creating Vendor Category Options for Oracle Solaris Clients

Name	Code	Data Type	Granularity	Maximum	Vendor Client Classes *	Description
<i>The following Vendor category options are required to enable a DHCP server to support Oracle Solaris installation clients. The options are used in the Oracle Solaris client's startup scripts.</i>						
<b>Note</b> – Vendor client classes that are listed here are examples only. You should specify client classes that indicate the actual clients in your network that you need to install from the network.						
SrootIP4	2	IP address	1	1	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	IP address of root server
SrootNM	3	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Host name of root server
SrootPTH	4	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Path to the client's root directory on the root server
SinstIP4	10	IP address	1	1	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	IP address of JumpStart install server
SinstNM	11	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Host name of install server

TABLE 3-4 Values for Creating Vendor Category Options for Oracle Solaris Clients (Continued)

Name	Code	Data Type	Granularity	Maximum	Vendor Client Classes*	Description
SinstPTH	12	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Path to installation image on install server
<i>The following options can be used by the client startup scripts, but are not required by the scripts.</i>						
<b>Note</b> – Vendor client classes that are listed here are examples only. You should specify client classes that indicate the actual clients in your network that you need to install from the network.						
SrootOpt	1	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	NFS mount options for the client's root file system
SbootFIL	7	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Path to the client's boot file
SbootRS	9	NUMBER	2	1	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	NFS read size used by standalone boot program when loading the kernel
SsysidCF	13	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Path to sysidcfg file, in the format <i>server:/path</i>
SjumpsCF	14	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Path to JumpStart configuration file in the format <i>server:/path</i>
SbootURI	16	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Path to the standalone boot file or path to the WAN boot file. For the standalone boot file, use the following format.  tftp://inetboot.sun4u  For the WAN boot file, the format is  <i>http://host.domain/path-to-file</i>  This option can be used to override <code>BootFile</code> and <code>siaddr</code> settings in order to retrieve a standalone boot file. Supported protocols: tftp (inetboot), http (wanboot). For example, use the following format.  tftp://inetboot.sun4u

TABLE 3-4 Values for Creating Vendor Category Options for Oracle Solaris Clients (Continued)

Name	Code	Data Type	Granularity	Maximum	Vendor Client Classes*	Description
SHTTPproxy	17	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	IP address and port number of the proxy server that is used on your network. This option is needed only when a client is booting across a WAN, and the local network uses a proxy server. For example, use the following format: 198.162.10.5:8080

*The following options are not currently used by the Oracle Solaris client startup scripts. You can use them only if you edit the startup scripts.*

**Note** – Vendor client classes that are listed here are examples only. You should specify client classes that indicate the actual clients in your network that you need to install from the network.

SswapIP4	5	IP address	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	IP address of swap server
SswapPTH	6	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Path to the client's swap file on the swap server
Stz	8	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Time zone for client
Sterm	15	ASCII text	1	0	SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000, SUNW.Sun-Fire-880, SUNW.i86pc	Terminal type

When you have created the options, you can create macros that include those options. The following table lists sample macros you can create to support Oracle Solaris installation for clients.

TABLE 3-5 Sample Macros to Support Network Installation Clients

Macro Name	Contains These Options and Macros
Solaris	SrootIP4, SrootNM, SinstIP4, SinstNM
sparc	SrootPTH, SinstPTH
sun4u	Solaris and sparc macros
sun4v	Solaris and sparc macros
i86pc	Solaris macro, SrootPTH, SinstPTH, SbootFIL

TABLE 3-5 Sample Macros to Support Network Installation Clients (Continued)

Macro Name	Contains These Options and Macros
SUNW.i86pc	i86pc macro  <b>Note</b> – The SUNW.i86pc vendor client class is only valid for the Solaris 10 3/05 release and compatible versions.
SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000	sun4u macro, SbootFIL
SUNW.Sun-Fire-880	sun4u macro, SbootFIL
PXEClient:Arch: 00000:UNDI:002001	BootSrvA, BootFile
xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx network address macros	BootSrvA option could be added to existing network address macros. The value of BootSrvA should indicate the tftboot server.
01client-MAC-address client-specific macros (for example, 010007E9044ABF)	BootSrvA, BootFile

The macro names that are listed in the previous table match the Vendor client classes of the clients that must install from the network. These names are examples of clients you might have on your network. See “[Working With DHCP Options \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: IP Services* for information about determining a client's vendor client class.

You can create these options and macros by using the following methods.

- Create the options and macros in DHCP Manager. See “[Using DHCP Manager to Create Install Options and Macros](#)” on page 53 for instructions about how to create options and macros in DHCP Manager.
- Write a script that creates the options and macros by using the `dhtadm` command. See “[Writing a Script That Uses dhtadm to Create Options and Macros](#)” on page 56 for information about how to write scripts that create these options and macros.

Note that the total size of the vendor options that are provided to a particular client must not exceed 255 bytes, including the option codes and length information. This is a limitation of the current Oracle Solaris DHCP protocol implementation. Generally, you should pass the minimum amount of vendor information needed. You should use short path names in options that require path names. If you create symbolic links to long paths, you can use the shorter link names.

## Using DHCP Manager to Create Install Options and Macros

You can use DHCP Manager to create the options that are listed in [Table 3-4](#) and the macros that are listed in [Table 3-5](#).

## ▼ How to Create Options to Support Oracle Solaris Installation (DHCP Manager)

**Before You Begin** Perform the following tasks before you create DHCP macros for your installation.

- Add the clients that you want to install with DHCP as install clients of your network installation server. For information about how to add a client to an install server, see [Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network \(Overview\)”](#).
- Configure your DHCP server. If you have not configured your DHCP server, see [Chapter 13, “Planning for DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.

### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role on the DHCP server system.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [“Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

### 2 Start the DHCP Manager.

```
# /usr/sadm/admin/bin/dhcpmgr &
```

The DHCP Manager window is displayed.

### 3 Select the Options tab in DHCP Manager.

### 4 Choose Create from the Edit menu.

The Create Option panel opens.

### 5 Type the option name for the first option, then type values appropriate for that option.

Use the output of the `add_install_client` command, [Table 3–3](#), and [Table 3–4](#) to check the option names and values for options you must create. Notice that the vendor client classes are only suggested values. You should create classes to indicate the actual client types that need to obtain Oracle Solaris installation parameters from the DHCP service. See [“Working With DHCP Options \(Task Map\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: IP Services* for information about how to determine a client’s vendor client class.

### 6 Click OK when you have entered all the values.

### 7 In the Options tab, select the option you just created.

### 8 Select Duplicate from the Edit menu.

The Duplicate Option panel opens.

### 9 Type the name of another option, then modify other values appropriately.

The values for code, data type, granularity, and maximum are most likely to need modification. See [Table 3–3](#) and [Table 3–4](#) for the values.

**10 Repeat Step 7 through Step 9 until you have created all the options.**

You can now create macros to pass the options to network installation clients, as explained in the following procedure.

---

**Note** – You do not need to add these options to a Oracle Solaris client's `/etc/dhcp/inittab` file because they are already included in that file.

---

**▼ How to Create Macros to Support Oracle Solaris Installation (DHCP Manager)**

**Before You Begin** Perform the following tasks before you create DHCP macros for your installation.

- Add the clients that you want to install with DHCP as install clients of your network installation server. For information about how to add a client to an install server, see [Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network \(Overview\)”](#)
- Configure your DHCP server. If you have not configured your DHCP server, see [Chapter 13, “Planning for DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.
- Create the DHCP options that you want to use in your macro. For instructions about how to create DHCP options, see [“How to Create Options to Support Oracle Solaris Installation \(DHCP Manager\)”](#) on page 54.

**1 Select the Macros tab in DHCP Manager.****2 Choose Create from the Edit menu.**

The Create Macro panel opens.

**3 Type the name of a macro.**

See [Table 3–5](#) for macro names you might use.

**4 Click the Select button.**

The Select Option panel opens.

**5 Select Vendor in the Category list.**

The Vendor options you created are listed.

**6 Select an option you want to add to the macro and click OK.****7 Type a value for the option.**

See [Table 3–3](#) and [Table 3–4](#) for the option's data type and refer to the information that `add_install_client -d` reports.

**8 Repeat Step 6 through Step 7 for each option you want to include.**

To include another macro, type **Include** as the option name and type the macro name as the option value.

**9 Click OK when the macro is complete.****More Information** Continuing the Installation

If you plan to use DHCP in an installation over the network, you need to set up an installation server and add the system as an installation client. For more information, see [Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network \(Overview\).”](#)

If you plan to use DHCP in a WAN boot installation, you need to perform additional tasks. For more information, see [Chapter 10, “WAN Boot \(Overview\).”](#)

If you plan to use DHCP in a custom JumpStart installation, you need to create a profile and a `rules.ok` file. For more information, see [Chapter 2, “Custom JumpStart \(Overview\),”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

**See Also** For more information about DHCP, see [Part III, “DHCP,”](#) in *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.

**Writing a Script That Uses dhtadm to Create Options and Macros**

You can create a Korn shell script by adapting the example in [Example 3–1](#) to create all the options listed in [Table 3–3](#) and [Table 3–4](#) and some useful macros. Be sure to change all IP addresses and values contained in quotes to the correct IP addresses, server names, and paths for your network. You should also edit the `Vendor=` key to indicate the class of clients you have. Use the information that `add_install_client -d` reports to obtain the data that you need to adapt the script.

**EXAMPLE 3–1** Sample Script to Support Network Installation

```
# Load the Solaris vendor specific options. We'll start out supporting
# the Sun-Blade-1000, Sun-Fire-880, and i86 platforms. Note that the
# SUNW.i86pc option only applies for the Solaris 10 3/05 release.
# Changing -A to -M would replace the current values, rather than add them.
dhtadm -A -s SrootOpt -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,1,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SrootIP4 -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,2,IP,1,1'
dhtadm -A -s SrootNM -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,3,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SrootPTH -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,4,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SswapIP4 -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,5,IP,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SswapPTH -d \
```



## EXAMPLE 3-1 Sample Script to Support Network Installation (Continued)

```
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,6,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SbootFIL -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,7,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s Stz -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,8,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SbootRS -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,9,NUMBER,2,1'
dhtadm -A -s SinstIP4 -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,10,IP,1,1'
dhtadm -A -s SinstNM -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,11,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SinstPTH -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,12,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SsysidCF -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,13,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SjumpsCF -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,14,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s Sterm -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,15,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SbootURI -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,16,ASCII,1,0'
dhtadm -A -s SHTTPproxy -d \
'Vendor=SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 SUNW.i86pc,17,ASCII,1,0'
# Load some useful Macro definitions.
# Define all Solaris-generic options under this macro named Solaris.
dhtadm -A -m Solaris -d \
':SrootIP4=10.21.0.2:SrootNM="blue2":SinstIP4=10.21.0.2:SinstNM="red5":'
# Define all sparc-platform specific options under this macro named sparc.
dhtadm -A -m sparc -d \
':SrootPTH="/export/sparc/root":SinstPTH="/export/sparc/install":'
# Define all sun4u architecture-specific options under this macro named sun4u.
# (Includes Solaris and sparc macros.)
dhtadm -A -m sun4u -d ':Include=Solaris:Include=sparc:'
# Solaris on IA32-platform-specific parameters are under this macro named i86pc.
# Note that this macro applies only for the Solaris 10 3/05 release.
dhtadm -A -m i86pc -d \
':Include=Solaris:SrootPTH="/export/i86pc/root":SinstPTH="/export/i86pc/install"\
:SbootFIL="/platform/i86pc/kernel/unix":'
# Solaris on IA32 machines are identified by the "SUNW.i86pc" class. All
# clients identifying themselves as members of this class will see these
# parameters in the macro called SUNW.i86pc, which includes the i86pc macro.
# Note that this class only applies for the Solaris 10 3/05 release.
dhtadm -A -m SUNW.i86pc -d ':Include=i86pc:'
# Sun-Blade-1000 platforms identify themselves as part of the
# "SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000" class.
# All clients identifying themselves as members of this class
# will see these parameters.
dhtadm -A -m SUNW.Sun-Blade-1000 -d \
':SbootFIL="/platform/sun4u/kernel/sparcv9/unix":\
Include=sun4u:'
# Sun-Fire-880 platforms identify themselves as part of the "SUNW.Sun-Fire-880" class.
# All clients identifying themselves as members of this class will see these parameters.
dhtadm -A -m SUNW.Sun-Fire-880 -d \
':SbootFIL="/platform/sun4u/kernel/sparcv9/unix":Include=sun4u:'
# Add our boot server IP to each of the network macros for our topology served by our
# DHCP server. Our boot server happens to be the same machine running our DHCP server.
```

**EXAMPLE 3-1** Sample Script to Support Network Installation (Continued)

```

dhtadm -M -m 10.20.64.64 -e BootSrvA=10.21.0.2
dhtadm -M -m 10.20.64.0 -e BootSrvA=10.21.0.2
dhtadm -M -m 10.20.64.128 -e BootSrvA=10.21.0.2
dhtadm -M -m 10.21.0.0 -e BootSrvA=10.21.0.2
dhtadm -M -m 10.22.0.0 -e BootSrvA=10.21.0.2
# Make sure we return host names to our clients.
dhtadm -M -m DHCP-servername -e Hostname= NULL_VALUE_
# Create a macro for PXE clients that want to boot from our boot server.
# Note that this macro applies for the Solaris 10 3/05 release.
dhtadm -A -m PXEClient:Arch:00000:UNDI:002001 -d \
:BootFile=nbp.i86pc:BootSrvA=10.21.0.2:
# Create a macro for PXE clients that want to boot from our boot server.
# Note that this macro applies for the Solaris 10 2/06 release.
dhtadm -A -m PXEClient:Arch:00000:UNDI:002001 -d \
:BootFile=i86pc:BootSrvA=10.21.0.2:
# Create a macro for the x86 based client with the Ethernet address 00:07:e9:04:4a:bf
# to install from the network by using PXE.
dhtadm -A -m 010007E9044ABF -d :BootFile=010007E9044ABF:BootSrvA=10.21.0.2:
# The client with this MAC address is a diskless client. Override the root settings
# which at the network scope setup for Install with our client's root directory.
dhtadm -A -m 0800201AC25E -d \
':SrootIP4=10.23.128.2:SrootNM="orange-svr-2":SrootPTH="/export/root/10.23.128.12":'

```

As superuser, execute `dhtadm` in batch mode. Specify the name of the script to add the options and macros to your `dhcptab`. For example, if your script is named `netinstalloptions`, type the following command.

```
# dhtadm -B netinstalloptions
```

Clients that have vendor client classes that are listed in the `Vendor=` string can now use DHCP to install over the network.

For more information about how to use the `dhtadm` command, see [dhtadm\(1M\)](#). For more information about the `dhcptab` file, see [dhcptab\(4\)](#).

## PART II

# Installing Over a Local Area Network

This part describes how to install a system that is on your local area network (LAN).



# Installing From the Network (Overview)

---

This chapter provides an introduction on how to set up your local area network and systems to install the Oracle Solaris software from the network instead of from DVD or CD media. This chapter provides overview information on the following topics.

- “[Network Installation Introduction](#)” on page 61
- “[x86: Overview of Booting and Installing Over the Network With PXE](#)” on page 64

For information on how to install a client over a wide area network, see [Chapter 10, “WAN Boot \(Overview\)”](#).

## Network Installation Introduction

This section provides you with information you need before you can perform an installation from the network. Network installations enable you to install the Oracle Solaris software from a system, called an install server, that has access to the current Oracle Solaris release disc images. You copy the contents of the current Oracle Solaris release DVD or CD media to the install server's hard disk. Then, you can install the Oracle Solaris software from the network by using any of the Oracle Solaris installation methods.

## Required Servers for Network Installation

To install the Oracle Solaris OS from the network, the systems to be installed require the following servers to be present on the network.

- **Install server** – A networked system that contains the current Oracle Solaris release disc images from which you can install current Oracle Solaris release on other systems on the network. You create an install server by copying the images from the following media:
  - Oracle Solaris DVD
  - Oracle Solaris Software CDs

---

**Note – Starting with the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release**, only a DVD is provided. Oracle Solaris Software CDs are no longer provided.

---

After you copy the image from the Oracle Solaris Software CDs, you can also copy the image from the Oracle Solaris Languages CDs as necessary for your installation requirements.

You can enable a single install server to provide disc images for different Oracle Solaris releases and for multiple platforms by copying the images on to the install server's hard disk. For example, a single install server could contain the disc images for the SPARC platform and x86 platform.

For details about how to create an install server, refer to one of the following sections.

- [“To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media” on page 68](#)
- [“SPARC: To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 CD Media” on page 90](#)
- **Boot server** – A server system that provides client systems on the same network subnet with the information that they need to boot in order to install the OS. A boot server and install server are typically the same system. However, if the system on which the current Oracle Solaris release is to be installed is located in a different subnet than the install server and you are not using DHCP, a boot server is required on that subnet.

A single boot server can provide current Oracle Solaris release boot software for multiple releases, including the current Oracle Solaris release boot software for different platforms. For example, a SPARC boot server can provide the Solaris 9 and current Oracle Solaris release boot software for SPARC based systems. The same SPARC boot server can also provide the current Oracle Solaris release boot software for x86 based systems.

---

**Note** – When using DHCP, you do not need to create a separate boot server. For more information, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)” on page 47](#).

---

For details about how to create a boot server, refer to one of the following sections:

- [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image” on page 71](#)
- [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image” on page 95](#)
- **(Optional) DHCP server** – A server that uses the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) to provide the network parameters that are necessary for installation. You can configure a DHCP server to configure and install specific clients, all clients on a specific network, or an entire class of clients. When using DHCP, you do not need to create a separate boot server.

After you have created the install server, you add clients to the network with the `add_install_client` command and the `-d` option. The `-d` option enables you to set up client systems for Oracle Solaris installation from the network by using DHCP.

For information on DHCP options for installation parameters, see “[Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)](#)” on page 47.

- **(Optional) Name server** – A system that manages a distributed network database, such as DNS, NIS, NIS+, or LDAP, that contains information about systems on the network.

For details about how to create a name server, refer to *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*.

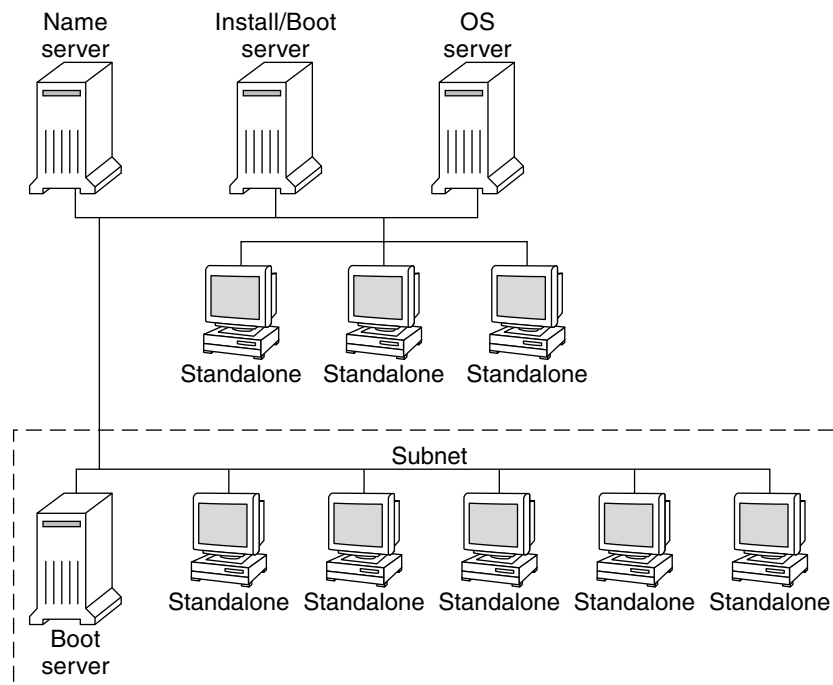
---

**Note** – The install server and name server can be the same or different systems.

---

Figure 4–1 illustrates the servers that are typically used for network installation. Note that this sample network does not include a DHCP server.

FIGURE 4–1 Network Installation Servers



## x86: Overview of Booting and Installing Over the Network With PXE

This section provides an overview of the Preboot Execution Environment (PXE).

### x86: What is PXE?

PXE network boot is a “direct” network boot. No boot media is required on the client system. With PXE, you can install an x86 based client over the network by using DHCP.

PXE network boot is available only for devices that implement the Intel Preboot Execution Environment specification. To determine if your system supports PXE network boot, see your hardware manufacturer's documentation.

### x86: Guidelines for Booting With PXE

To boot over the network by using PXE, you need the following systems.

- An install server
- A DHCP server
- An x86 client that supports PXE

When you are preparing to use PXE to install a client over the network, consider the following issues.

- Set up only one DHCP server on the subnet that includes the client system that you want to install. The PXE network boot does not work properly over subnets that include multiple DHCP servers.
- Some early versions of PXE firmware have a variety of shortcomings. If you experience difficulty with a particular PXE adapter, obtain firmware upgrade information from the adapter manufacturer's web site. Refer to the [e1x1\(7D\)](#) and [iprb\(7D\)](#) man pages for more information.



## Installing From the Network With DVD Media (Tasks)

---

This chapter describes how to use DVD media to set up your network and systems to install the Oracle Solaris software from the network. Network installations enable you to install the Oracle Solaris software from a system that has access to the current Oracle Solaris release disc images, called an install server, to other systems on the network. You copy the contents of the current Oracle Solaris release DVD media to the install server's hard disk. Then, you can install the Oracle Solaris software from the network by using any of the Oracle Solaris installation methods.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- [“Task Map: Installing From the Network With DVD Media” on page 66](#)
- [“Creating an Install Server With DVD Media” on page 68](#)
- [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image” on page 71](#)
- [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image” on page 73](#)
- [“Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image” on page 79](#)

**Note –**

- **Starting with the Solaris 10 11/06 release**, you have the option during an initial installation to change the network security settings so that all network services, except Secure Shell, are disabled or restricted to respond to local requests only. This security option is available only during an initial installation, not during an upgrade. An upgrade maintains any previously set services. If necessary, you can restrict network services after an upgrade by using the `netservices` command. See “[Planning Network Security](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

The network services can be enabled after installation by using the `netservices open` command or by enabling individual services by using SMF commands. See “[Revising Security Settings After Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

- **Starting with the Solaris 10 10/08 release**, the structure of the Oracle Solaris DVD and Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD has changed for the SPARC platform. Slice 0 is no longer at the top of the directory structure. Therefore, the structure of the x86 and SPARC DVDs and Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD are the same. This change in structure makes setting up an install server easier if you have a mix of platforms, such as a SPARC install server and x86 media.

## Task Map: Installing From the Network With DVD Media

TABLE 5-1 Task Map: Setting Up an Install Server With DVD Media

Task	Description	For Instructions
(x86 only): Verify that your system supports PXE.	If you want to install an x86 based system over the network, confirm that your machine can use PXE to boot without local boot media.  If your x86 based system does not support PXE, you must boot the system from a local DVD or CD.	Check your hardware manufacturer's documentation or the system BIOS.
Choose an installation method.	The Oracle Solaris OS provides several methods for installation or upgrade. Choose the installation method that is most appropriate for your environment.	“ <a href="#">Choosing an Oracle Solaris Installation Method</a> ” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>

TABLE 5-1 Task Map: Setting Up an Install Server With DVD Media (Continued)

Task	Description	For Instructions
Gather information about your system.	Use the checklist and complete the worksheet to collect all of the information that you need to install or upgrade.	Chapter 5, “Gathering Information Before Installation or Upgrade (Planning),” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>
(Optional) Preconfigure system information.	You can preconfigure system information to avoid being prompted for the information during the installation or upgrade.	Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information (Tasks)”
Create an install server.	Use the <code>setup_install_server(1M)</code> command to copy the Oracle Solaris DVD to the install server's hard disk.	“Creating an Install Server With DVD Media” on page 68
(Optional) Create boot servers.	If you want to install systems from the network that are not on the same subnet as the install server, you must create a boot server on the subnet to boot the systems. Use the <code>setup_install_server</code> command with the <code>-b</code> option to set up a boot server. If you are using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), a boot server is not necessary.	“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image” on page 71
Add systems to be installed from the network.	Use the <code>add_install_client</code> command to set up each system that you want to install from the network. Each system that you want to install needs to find the install server, the boot server if required, and configuration information on the network.	“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image” on page 73
(Optional) Configure the DHCP server.	If you want to use DHCP to provide system configuration and installation parameters, configure the DHCP server, then create the appropriate options and macros for your installation.  <b>Note</b> – If you want to install an x86 based system from the network with PXE, you must configure a DHCP server.	Chapter 13, “Planning for DHCP Service (Tasks),” in <i>System Administration Guide: IP Services</i>  “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47
Install the system over the network.	Begin the installation by booting the system from the network.	“Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image” on page 79

## Creating an Install Server With DVD Media

The install server contains the installation image needed to install systems from the network. You must create an install server to install the Oracle Solaris software on a system from the network. You do not always need to set up a boot server.

- If you are using DHCP to set installation parameters or your install server and client are on the same subnet, you do not need a boot server.
- If your install server and your client are not on the same subnet and you are not using DHCP, you must create separate boot servers for each subnet. You could create an install server for each subnet. However, install servers require more disk space.

### ▼ To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media

---

**Note** – This procedure assumes that the system is running the Volume Manager. If you are not using the Volume Manager to manage media, refer to *System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems*.

---

- 1 **On the system that is to become the install server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “Configuring RBAC (Task Map)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

The system must include a DVD-ROM drive and be part of the site's network and naming service. If you use a naming service, the system must already be in a service, such as NIS, NIS+, DNS, or LDAP. If you do not use a naming service, you must distribute information about this system by following your site's policies.

- 2 **Insert the Oracle Solaris DVD in the system's drive.**

- 3 **Create a directory to contain the DVD image.**

```
# mkdir -p install_dir_path
```

*install\_dir\_path* specifies the directory where the DVD image is to be copied.

- 4 **Change to the Tools directory on the mounted disc.**

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
```

- 5 **Copy the DVD image in the drive to the install server's hard disk.**

```
# ./setup_install_server install_dir_path
```

*install\_dir\_path* Specifies the directory where the DVD image is to be copied

---

**Note** – The `setup_install_server` command indicates whether you have enough disk space available for the Oracle Solaris Software disc images. To determine available disk space, use the `df -kl` command.

---

## 6 Decide if you need to make the install server available for mounting.

- If the install server is on the same subnet as the system to be installed or you are using DHCP, you do not need to create a boot server. Proceed to [Step 7](#).
- If the install server is not on the same subnet as the system to be installed and you are not using DHCP, complete the following steps.

### a. Verify that the path to the install server's image is shared appropriately.

```
# share | grep install_dir_path
```

*install\_dir\_path* Specifies the path to the installation image where the DVD image was copied

- If the path to the install server's directory is displayed and `anon=0` is displayed in the options, proceed to [Step 7](#).
- If the path to the install server's directory is not displayed or you do not have `anon=0` in the options, continue.

### b. Make the install server available to the boot server.

Using the `share` command, add this entry to the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file.

```
share -F nfs -o ro,anon=0 -d "install server directory" install_dir_path
```

### c. Verify that the `nfsd` daemon is running.

- If the install server is running the current Oracle Solaris release, or compatible version, type the following command.

```
# svcs -l svc:/network/nfs/server:default
```

If the `nfsd` daemon is online, continue to [Step d](#). If the `nfsd` daemon is not online, start it.

```
# svcadm enable svc:/network/nfs/server
```

- If the install server is running the Solaris 9 OS, or compatible version, type the following command.

```
# ps -ef | grep nfsd
```

If the `nfsd` daemon is running, continue to [Step d](#). If the `nfsd` daemon is not running, start it.

```
# /etc/init.d/nfs.server start
```

**d. Share the install server.**

```
# shareall
```

**7 Change directories to root (/).**

```
# cd /
```

**8 Eject the Oracle Solaris DVD.**

**9 (Optional) Patch the files that are located in the miniroot on the net install image that was created by `setup_install_server`.**

Patching a file might be necessary if a boot image has problems. For step-by-step procedures, see [Chapter 7, “Patching the Miniroot Image \(Tasks\).”](#)

**10 Decide if you need to create a boot server.**

- If you are using DHCP or the install server is on the same subnet as the system to be installed, you do not need to create a boot server. Proceed to [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image” on page 73](#).
- If you are *not* using DHCP and the install server and the client are on a different subnet, you must create a boot server. Proceed to [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image” on page 71](#).

**Example 5–1 SPARC: Creating an Install Server With a DVD**

The following example illustrates how to create an install server by copying the Oracle Solaris DVD to the install server's `/export/home/dvd` directory. This example assumes that the install server is running the current Oracle Solaris release.

```
# mkdir -p /export/home/dvd
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./setup_install_server /export/home/dvd
```

If you need a separate boot server, make the install server available to the boot server.

Using the `share` command, add this entry to the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file.

```
share -F nfs -o ro,anon=0 -d "install server directory" /export/home/dvdsparc
```

Check if the `nfsd` daemon is online. If the `nfsd` daemon is not online, start it and share it.

```
# svcs -l svc:/network/nfs/server:default
# svcadm enable svc:/network/nfs/server
# shareall
# cd /
```

### More Information **Continuing the Installation**

After you set up the install server, you must add the client as an installation client. For information about how to add client systems to install over the network, see [“To Add Systems to Be Installed From the Network With `add\_install\_client` \(DVD\)”](#) on page 74.

If you are not using DHCP, and your client system is on a different subnet than your install server, you must create a boot server. For more information, see [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image”](#) on page 71.

**See Also** For additional information about the `setup_install_server` and the `add_to_install_server` commands, see [`install\_scripts\(1M\)`](#).

## Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image

You must create an install server to install the Oracle Solaris software on a system from the network. You do not always need to set up a boot server. A boot server contains enough of the boot software to boot systems from the network, and then the install server completes the installation of the Oracle Solaris software.

- If you are using DHCP to set installation parameters or your install server or client is on the same subnet as the install server, you do not need a boot server. Proceed to [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image”](#) on page 73.
- If your install server and your client are not on the same subnet and you are not using DHCP, you must create separate boot servers for each subnet. You could create an install server for each subnet; however, install servers require more disk space.

### ▼ **To Create a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image**

- 1 **On the system you intend to make the boot server for the subnet, log in and become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [“Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

The system must have access to a remote current Oracle Solaris release disc image, which is normally the install server. If you use a naming service, the system should also be in a naming service. If you do not use a naming service, you must distribute information about this system by following your site's policies.

**2 Mount the Oracle Solaris DVD from the install server.**

```
# mount -F nfs -o ro server_name:path /mnt
```

*server\_name:path* Is the install server name and absolute path to the disc image

**3 Create a directory for the boot image.**

```
# mkdir -p boot_dir_path
```

*boot\_dir\_path* Specifies the directory where the boot software is to be copied

**4 Change to the Tools directory on the Oracle Solaris DVD image.**

```
# cd /mnt/Solaris_10/Tools
```

**5 Copy the boot software to the boot server.**

```
# ./setup_install_server -b boot_dir_path
```

-b Specifies to set up the system as a boot server

*boot\_dir\_path* Specifies the directory where the boot software is to be copied

---

**Note** – The `setup_install_server` command indicates whether you have enough disk space available for the images. To determine available disk space, use the `df -k` command.

---

**6 Change directories to root (/).**

```
# cd /
```

**7 Unmount the installation image.**

```
# umount /mnt
```

You are now ready to set up systems to be installed from the network. See [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image”](#) on page 73.



**Example 5-2** Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet (DVD)

The following example illustrates how to create a boot server on a subnet. These commands copy the boot software from the Oracle Solaris DVD image to `/export/home/dvdsparc` on the local disk of a boot server named `crystal`.

```
# mount -F nfs -o ro crystal:/export/home/dvdsparc /mnt
# mkdir -p /export/home/dvdsparc
# cd /mnt/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./setup_install_server -b /export/home/dvdsparc
# cd /
# umount /mnt
```

**More Information** Continuing the Installation

After you set up the boot server, you must add the client as an installation client. For information about how to add client systems to install over the network, see [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image”](#) on page 73.

**See Also** For additional information about the `setup_install_server` command, see [`install\_scripts\(1M\)`](#).

## Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image

After you create an install server and, if necessary, a boot server, you must set up each system that you want to install from the network. Each system that you want to install needs to find the following:

- An install server
- A boot server if it is required
- The `sysidcfg` file if you use a `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure system information
- A name server if you use a naming service to preconfigure system information
- The profile in the JumpStart directory on the profile server if you are using the custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, installation method

Use the following `add_install_client` procedure for setting up install servers and clients. Also, see the example procedures for the following:

- If you are using DHCP to set installation parameters for a SPARC client, see [Example 5-3](#).
- If your install server and client are on the same subnet, see [Example 5-4](#).

- If your install server and your client are not on the same subnet and you are not using DHCP, see [Example 5-5](#).
- If you are using DHCP to set installation parameters for x86 clients, see [Example 5-6](#).
- If you want to use a specific serial port to display output during the installation of an x86 based system, see [Example 5-7](#).

For more options to use with this command, see the man page, `add_install_client(1M)`.

## ▼ To Add Systems to Be Installed From the Network With `add_install_client` (DVD)

After you create an install server, you must set up each system that you want to install from the network.

Use the following `add_install_client` procedure for set up an x86 client to install from the network.

**Before You Begin** If you have a boot server, make sure you have shared the install server installation image and started the appropriate services. See “To Create a SPARC Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media” [Step 6](#).

Each system that you want to install needs to find the following items.

- Install server
- Boot server if it is required
- `sysidcfg` file if you use a `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure system information
- Name server if you use a naming service to preconfigure system information
- The profile in the JumpStart directory on the profile server if you are using the custom JumpStart installation method

### 1 On the install server or boot server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

### 2 If you use the NIS, NIS+, DNS, or LDAP naming service, verify that the following information about the system to be installed has been added to the naming service.

- Host name
- IP address

- Ethernet address

For more information on naming services, see *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*.

### 3 Add the client to the install server's `/etc/ethers` file.

- On the client, find the ethers address. The `/etc/ethers` map is taken from the local file.

```
# ifconfig -a grep ether
ether 8:0:20:b3:39:1d
```

- On the install server, open the `/etc/ethers` file in an editor. Add the address to the list.

### 4 Change to the Tools directory on the Oracle Solaris DVD image:

```
# cd /install_dir_path/Solaris_10/Tools
```

`install_dir_path` Specifies the path to the Tools directory

### 5 Set up the client system so it can be installed from the network.

```
# ./add_install_client -d -s install_server:install_dir_path \
-c jumpstart_server:jumpstart_dir_path -p sysid_server:path \
-t boot_image_path -b "boot-property=value" \
-e ethernet_address client_name platform_group
```

`-d`

Specifies that the client is to use DHCP to obtain the network install parameters. If you use the `-d` only, the `add_install_client` command sets up the installation information for client systems of the same class, for example, all SPARC client machines. To set up the installation information for a specific client, use the `-d` with the `-e` option.

For x86 clients, use this option to boot the systems from the network by using PXE network boot. The output of this option lists the DHCP options you need to create on the DHCP server.

For more information about class-specific installations by using DHCP, see “[Creating DHCP Options and Macros for Oracle Solaris Installation Parameters](#)” on page 48.

`-s install_server:install_dir_path`

Specifies the name and path to the install server.

- `install_server` is the host name of the install server.
- `install_dir_path` is the absolute path to the Oracle Solaris DVD image.

`-c jumpstart_server:jumpstart_dir_path`

Specifies a JumpStart directory for custom JumpStart installations. `jumpstart_server` is the host name of the server on which the JumpStart directory is located. `jumpstart_dir_path` is the absolute path to the JumpStart directory.

-p *sysid\_server: path*

Specifies the path to the `sysidcfg` file for preconfiguring system information. *sysid\_server* is either a valid host name or an IP address for the server that contains the file. *path* is the absolute path to the directory containing the `sysidcfg` file.

-t *boot\_image\_path*

Specifies the path to an alternate boot image if you want to use a boot image other than the one in the `Tools` directory on the current Oracle Solaris release net installation image, CD, or DVD.

-b "*boot-property=value*"

**x86 based systems only:** Enables you to set the value of a boot property variable that you want to use to boot the client from the network. The `-b` option must be used with the `-e` option.

See the [eeprom\(1M\)](#) man page for descriptions of boot properties.

-e *ethernet\_address*

Specifies the Ethernet address of the client that you want to install. This option enables you to set up the installation information to use for a specific client, including a boot file for that client.

The `nbp.` prefix is not used in boot file names. For example, if you specify `-e 00:07:e9:04:4a:bf` for an x86 based client, the command creates the boot file `010007E9044ABF.i86pc` in the `/tftpboot` directory. However, the current Oracle Solaris release supports the use of legacy boot files with the `nbp.` prefix.

For more information about client-specific installations by using DHCP, see [“Creating DHCP Options and Macros for Oracle Solaris Installation Parameters”](#) on page 48.

*client\_name*

Is the name of the system to be installed from the network. This name is *not* the host name of the install server.

*platform\_group*

Is the platform group of the system to be installed. For more information, see [“Platform Names and Groups”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

### **Example 5-3** SPARC: Adding a SPARC Install Client on a SPARC Install Server When Using DHCP (DVD)

The following example illustrates how to add an install client when you are using DHCP to set installation parameters on the network. The install client is named `basil`, which is an Ultra 5 system. The file system `/export/home/dvdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools` contains the `add_install_client` command.

For more information on how to use DHCP to set installation parameters for network installations, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) on page 47.

```
sparc_install_server# cd /export/home/dvdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools
sparc_install_server# ./add_install_client -d basil sun4u
```

#### Example 5-4 Adding an Install Client That Is On the Same Subnet As Its Server (DVD)

The following example illustrates how to add an install client that is on the same subnet as the install server. The install client is named `basil`, which is an Ultra 5 system. The file system `/export/home/dvdsparc/` contains the `add_install_client` command.

```
install_server# cd /export/home/dvdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools
install_server# ./add_install_client basil sun4u
```

#### Example 5-5 Adding an Install Client to a Boot Server (DVD)

The following example illustrates how to add an install client to a boot server. The install client is named `rose`, which is an Ultra 5 system. Run the command on the boot server. The `-s` option is used to specify an install server that is named `rosemary`, which contains Oracle Solaris Operating System for SPARC Platforms DVD image in `/export/home/dvdsparc`.

```
boot_server# cd /export/home/dvdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools
boot_server# ./add_install_client -s rosemary:/export/home/dvdsparc rose sun4u
```

#### Example 5-6 x86: Adding a Single x86 Install Client on an x86 Install Server When Using DHCP (DVD)

The following example illustrates how to add an x86 install client to an install server when you are using DHCP to set installation parameters on the network.

- The `-d` option is used to specify that clients are to use the DHCP protocol for configuration. If you plan to use PXE network boot, you must use the DHCP protocol.
- The `-e` option indicates that this installation will only occur on the client with the Ethernet address `00:07:e9:04:4a:bf`.
- The `-s` option is used to specify that the clients are to be installed from the install server that is named `rosemary`.

This server contains Oracle Solaris Operating System for x86 Platforms DVD image in `/export/home/dvdx86`.

```
x86_install_server# cd /export/boot/dvdx86/Solaris_10/Tools
x86_install_server# ./add_install_client -d -e 00:07:e9:04:4a:bf \
-s rosemary:/export/home/dvdx86 i86pc
```

The previous commands set up the client with the Ethernet address `00:07:e9:04:4a:bf` as an installation client. The boot file `010007E9044ABF.i86pc` is created on the installation server. In previous releases, this boot file was named `nbp.010007E9044ABF.i86pc`.

For more information on how to use DHCP to set installation parameters for network installations, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)” on page 47](#).

### Example 5-7 x86: Specifying a Serial Console to Use During a Network Installation (DVD)

The following example illustrates how to add an x86 install client to an install server and specify a serial console to use during the installation. This example sets up the install client in the following manner.

- The `-d` option indicates that the client is set up to use DHCP to set installation parameters.
- The `-e` option indicates that this installation will occur only on the client with the Ethernet address `00:07:e9:04:4a:bf`.
- The `-b` option instructs the installation program to use the serial port `ttya` as an input and an output device.

Use this set of commands to add the client.

```
install server# cd /export/boot/dvdx86/Solaris_10/Tools
install server# ./add_install_client -d -e "00:07:e9:04:4a:bf" \
-b "console=ttya" i86pc
```

For a complete description of the boot property variables and values you can use with the `-b` option, see the [`eeeprom\(1M\)` man page](#).

### More Information Continuing the Installation

If you are using a DHCP server to install the x86 based client over the network, configure the DHCP server and create the options and macros that are listed in the output of the `add_install_client -d` command. For instructions about how to configure a DHCP server to support network installations, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)” on page 47](#).

**x86 based systems:** If you are not using a DHCP server, you must boot the system from a local Oracle Solaris OS DVD or CD.

**See Also** For additional information about the `add_install_client` command, see [`install\_scripts\(1M\)`](#).

# Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image

After you add the system as an installation client, you can install the client from the network. This section describes the following tasks.

- See “[SPARC: To Install the Client Over the Network \(DVD\)](#)” on page 79 for instructions about how to boot and install SPARC based systems over the network.
- See “[x86: To Install the Client Over the Network With GRUB \(DVD\)](#)” on page 81 for instructions about how to boot and install x86 based systems over the network.

## ▼ SPARC: To Install the Client Over the Network (DVD)

**Before You Begin** This procedure assumes that you have completed the following tasks.

- Set up an install server. For instructions about how to create an install server from DVD media, see “[To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media](#)” on page 68.
- Set up a boot server or a DHCP server, if necessary. If the system you want to install is on a different subnet than the installation server, you must set up a boot server, or use a DHCP server. For instructions about how to set up a boot server, see “[Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image](#)” on page 71. For instructions about how to set up a DHCP server to support network installations, see “[Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)](#)” on page 47.
- Gathered or preconfigured the information you need to install. You can perform this task in one or more of the following ways.
  - Gather the information in “[Checklist for Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

---

**Note** – If you have a system that contains non-global zones, Live Upgrade, a feature of Oracle Solaris, is the recommended upgrade program or program to add patches. Other upgrade programs might require extensive upgrade time, because the time required to complete the upgrade increases linearly with the number of installed non-global zones.

For information about upgrading with Live Upgrade, see Part I, “[Upgrading With Live Upgrade](#),” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning*.

---

- Create a `sysidcfg` file if you use a `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure system information. For information about how to create a `sysidcfg` file, see “[Preconfiguring With the sysidcfg File](#)” on page 18.
- Set up a name server if you use a naming service to preconfigure system information. For information about how to preconfigure information with a naming service, see “[Preconfiguring With the Naming Service](#)” on page 43.

- Create a profile in the JumpStart directory on the profile server if you are using the custom JumpStart installation method. For information about how to set up a custom JumpStart installation, see [Chapter 3, “Preparing Custom JumpStart Installations \(Tasks\)”](#), in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

**1 Turn on the client system.**

If the system is currently running, bring the system to run level 0.

The ok prompt is displayed.

**2 Boot the system from the network.**

- **To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI, type the following command.**

```
ok boot net
```

- **To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive text installer in a desktop session, type the following command.**

```
ok boot net - text
```

- **To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive text installer in a console session, type the following command.**

```
ok boot net - nowin
```

The system boots from the network.

**3 If you are prompted, answer the system configuration questions.**

- If you preconfigured all of the system information, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any configuration information. See [Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information \(Tasks\)”](#), for more information.
- If you did not preconfigure all the system information, use the [“Checklist for Installation”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* to help you answer the configuration questions.

---

**Note** – If the keyboard is self-identifying, the keyboard layout automatically configures during installation. If the keyboard is not self-identifying, you can select from a list of supported keyboard layouts during installation.

PS/2 keyboards are not self-identifying. You will be asked to select the keyboard layout during the installation.

For further information, see [“keyboard Keyword”](#) on page 27.

---

If you are using the GUI, after you confirm the system configuration information, the Welcome to Oracle Solaris panel appears.



- 4 If you are prompted, answer any additional questions to complete your installation.
  - If you preconfigured all of the installation options, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any installation information. See [Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information \(Tasks\)”](#), for more information.
  - If you did not preconfigure all the installation options, use the “[Checklist for Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* to help you answer the installation questions.

**See Also** For information about how to complete an interactive installation with the Oracle Solaris installation GUI, see “[To Install or Upgrade With the Oracle Solaris Installation Program With GRUB](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*.

## ▼ x86: To Install the Client Over the Network With GRUB (DVD)

The Oracle Solaris installation programs for x86 based systems use the GRUB boot loader. This procedure describes how to install an x86 based system over the network with the GRUB boot loader. For overview information about the GRUB boot loader, see [Chapter 7, “SPARC and x86 Based Booting \(Overview and Planning\)”](#), in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

To install the system over the network, you must instruct the client system to boot over the network. Enable network boot on the client system by using the BIOS setup program in the system BIOS, the network adapter BIOS, or both. On some systems, you must also adjust the boot device priority list so that network boot is attempted before booting from other devices. See the manufacturer's documentation for each setup program, or watch for setup program instructions during boot.

**Before You Begin** This procedure assumes that you have completed the following tasks.

- Set up an install server. For instructions about how to create an install server from DVD media, see “[To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media](#)” on page 68.
- Set up a boot server or a DHCP server, if necessary. If the system you want to install is on a different subnet than the installation server, you must set up a boot server, or use a DHCP server. For instructions about how to set up a boot server, see “[Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image](#)” on page 71. For instructions about how to set up a DHCP server to support network installations, see “[Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)](#)” on page 47.
- Gathered or preconfigured the information you need to install. You can perform this task in one or more of the following ways.

- Gather the information in “Checklist for Installation” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

---

**Note** – If you have a system that contains non-global zones, Live Upgrade is the recommended upgrade program or program to add patches. Other upgrade programs might require extensive upgrade time, because the time required to complete the upgrade increases linearly with the number of installed non-global zones.

For information about upgrading with Live Upgrade, see Part I, “Upgrading With Live Upgrade,” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning*.

---

- Create a `sysidcfg` file if you use a `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure system information. For information about how to create a `sysidcfg` file, see “Preconfiguring With the `sysidcfg` File” on page 18.
- Set up a name server if you use a naming service to preconfigure system information. For information about how to preconfigure information with a naming service, see “Preconfiguring With the Naming Service” on page 43.
- Create a profile in the JumpStart directory on the profile server if you are using the custom JumpStart installation method. For information about how to set up a custom JumpStart installation, see Chapter 3, “Preparing Custom JumpStart Installations (Tasks),” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

This procedure also assumes that your system can boot from the network.

**1 Turn on the system.**

**2 Type the appropriate keystroke combination to enter the system BIOS.**

Some PXE-capable network adapters have a feature that enables PXE boot if you type a particular keystroke in response to a brief boot-time prompt.

**3 In the system BIOS, instruct the system to boot from the network.**

See your hardware documentation for information about how to set the boot priority in the BIOS.

**4 Exit the BIOS.**

The system boots from the network. The GRUB menu is displayed.

**Note** – The GRUB menu that is displayed on your system might vary from the following sample, depending on the configuration of your network installation server.

```
GNU GRUB version 0.95 (631K lower / 2095488K upper memory)
```

```
+-----+
| Solaris Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 /cdrom0 |
|                                         |
+-----+
```

Use the ^ and v keys to select which entry is highlighted.  
Press enter to boot the selected OS, 'e' to edit the  
commands before booting, or 'c' for a command-line.

## 5 Select the appropriate installation option.

- **To install the Oracle Solaris OS from the network, select the appropriate Oracle Solaris entry on the menu, then press Enter.**

Select this entry if you want to install from the network installation server you set up in “[To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media](#)” on page 68.

- **To install the Oracle Solaris OS from the network with specific boot arguments, follow these steps.**

You might need to set specific boot arguments if you want to modify the device configuration during the installation, and did not set these boot arguments previously with the `add_install_client` command as described in “[To Add Systems to Be Installed From the Network With `add\_install\_client` \(DVD\)](#)” on page 74.

- a. **On the GRUB menu, select the installation option you want to edit, then press e.**

Boot commands that are similar to the following text are displayed in the GRUB menu.

```
kernel /I86pc.Solaris_10/multiboot kernel/unix \
-B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot \
module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive
```

- b. **Use the arrow keys to select the boot entry that you want to edit, then press e.**

The boot command that you want to edit is displayed in the GRUB edit window.

- c. **Edit the command by typing the boot arguments or options you want to use.**

The command syntax for the Grub edit menu is as follows.

```
grub edit>kernel /image_directory/multiboot kernel/unix/ \
install [url|ask] -B options install_media=media_type
```

For information about boot arguments and command syntax, see [Table 9-1](#).

- d. **To accept your edits and return to the GRUB menu, press Enter.**

---

**Note** – To cancel your edits and return to the GRUB menu, press Escape.

---

The GRUB menu is displayed. The edits you made to the boot command are displayed.

**e. To begin the installation, type b in the GRUB menu.**

The Oracle Solaris installation program checks the default boot disk for the requirements to install or upgrade the system. If the Oracle Solaris installation cannot detect the system configuration, the program prompts you for any missing information.

When the check is completed, the installation selection screen is displayed.

**6 Select an installation type.**

The installation selection screen displays the following options.

Select the type of installation you want to perform:

```
1 Solaris Interactive
2 Custom JumpStart
3 Solaris Interactive Text (Desktop session)
4 Solaris Interactive Text (Console session)
5 Apply driver updates
6 Single user shell
```

Enter the number of your choice followed by the <ENTER> key.  
Alternatively, enter custom boot arguments directly.

If you wait 30 seconds without typing anything,  
an interactive installation will be started.

- **To install the Oracle Solaris OS, choose from the following options.**
  - **To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI, type 1, then press Enter.**
  - **To install with the interactive text installer in a desktop session, type 3, then press Enter.**  
Select this installation type to override the default GUI installer and run the text installer.
  - **To install with the interactive text installer in a console session, type 4, then press Enter.**  
Select this installation type to override the default GUI installer and run the text installer.

If you want to perform an unattended custom JumpStart installation (option 2), see [Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations](#).

For detailed information about the Oracle Solaris installation GUI and text installer, see “System Requirements and Recommendations” in [Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade](#).

The system configures the devices and interfaces, and searches for configuration files. The installation program begins. Go to [Step 7](#) to continue the installation.

- **To perform system administration tasks before your installation, choose from the following options.**
  - **To update drivers or install an install time update (ITU), insert the update media, type 5, then press Enter.**

You might need to update drivers or install an ITU to enable the Oracle Solaris OS to run on your system. Follow the instructions for your driver update or ITU to install the update.
  - **To perform system administration tasks, type 6, then press Enter.**

You might want to launch a single user shell if you need to perform any system administration tasks on your system before you install. For information about system administration tasks you can perform prior to installation, see *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*.

After you perform these system administration tasks, the previous list of options is displayed. Select the appropriate option to continue the installation.

## 7 If you are prompted, answer the system configuration questions.

- If you preconfigured all of the system information, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any configuration information. See [Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information \(Tasks\)”](#) for more information.
- If you did not preconfigure all the system information, use the “[Checklist for Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* to help you answer the configuration questions.

---

**Note** – If the keyboard is self-identifying, the keyboard layout automatically configures during installation. If the keyboard is not self-identifying, you can select from a list of supported keyboard layouts during installation.

For further information, see “[keyboard Keyword](#)” on page 27.

---

---

**Note** – During installation, you can choose the default NFSv4 domain name. Or, you can specify a custom NFSv4 domain name. For further information, see “[nfs4\\_domain Keyword](#)” on page 36.

---

If you are using the installation GUI, after you confirm the system configuration information, the Welcome to Oracle Solaris panel appears.

- 8 If you are prompted, answer any additional questions to complete your installation.
  - If you preconfigured all of the installation options, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any installation information. See [Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information \(Tasks\),”](#) for more information.
  - If you did not preconfigure all the installation options, use the [“Checklist for Installation” in Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade](#) to help you answer the installation questions.
- 9 After the system boots and installs over the network, instruct the system to boot from the disk drive on subsequent boots.

---

**Note** – When you boot the system after the installation, a GRUB menu lists the operating systems that are installed, including the newly-installed Oracle Solaris OS. Select which operating system you want to boot. The default selection loads if you do not make another selection.

---

#### More Information Next Steps

If you install multiple operating systems on your machine, you need to instruct the GRUB boot loader to recognize these operating systems in order to boot. For more information, see [“Modifying Boot Behavior on x86 Based Systems” in System Administration Guide: Basic Administration](#).

**See Also** For information about how to complete an interactive installation with the Oracle Solaris installation GUI, see [“To Install or Upgrade With the Oracle Solaris Installation Program With GRUB” in Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Basic Installations](#).

## Installing From the Network With CD Media (Tasks)

---

This chapter describes how to use CD media to set up your network and systems to install the Oracle Solaris software from the network. Network installations enable you to install the Oracle Solaris software from a system that has access to the current Oracle Solaris release disc images, called an install server, to other systems on the network. You copy the contents of the CD media to the install server's hard disk. Then, you can install the Oracle Solaris software from the network by using any of the Oracle Solaris installation methods. This chapter covers the following topics:

---

**Note – Starting with the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release,** only a DVD is provided. Oracle Solaris Software CDs are no longer provided.

See “Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image” on page 79.

---

- “Task Map: Installing From the Network With CD Media” on page 88
- “Creating an Install Server With SPARC or x86 CD Media” on page 90
- “Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image” on page 95
- “Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image” on page 97
- “Installing the System From the Network With a CD Image” on page 102

**Note –**

- **Starting with the Solaris 10 11/06 release**, you have the option during an initial installation to change the network security settings so that all network services, except Secure Shell, are disabled or restricted to respond to local requests only. This security option is available only during an initial installation, not during an upgrade. An upgrade maintains any previously set services. If necessary, you can restrict network services after an upgrade by using the `netservices` command. See “[Planning Network Security](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

The network services can be enabled after installation by using the `netservices open` command or by enabling individual services by using SMF commands. See “[Revising Security Settings After Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

- **Starting with the Solaris 10 10/08 release**, the structure of the Oracle Solaris DVD and Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD has changed for the SPARC platform. Slice 0 is no longer at the top of the directory structure. Therefore the structure of the x86 and SPARC DVDs and Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD are the same. This change in structure makes setting up an install server easier if you have a mix of platforms, such as a SPARC install server and x86 media.

## Task Map: Installing From the Network With CD Media

TABLE 6-1 Task Map: Setting Up an Install Server With CD Media

Task	Description	For Instructions
(x86 only): Verify that your system supports PXE.	If you want to install an x86 based system over the network, confirm that your machine can use PXE to boot without local boot media.  If your x86 based system does not support PXE, you must boot the system from a local DVD or CD.	Check your hardware manufacturer's documentation or the system BIOS.
Choose an installation method.	The Oracle Solaris OS provides several methods for installation or upgrade. Choose the installation method that is most appropriate for your environment.	“ <a href="#">Choosing an Oracle Solaris Installation Method</a> ” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>



TABLE 6-1 Task Map: Setting Up an Install Server With CD Media (Continued)

Task	Description	For Instructions
Gather information about your system.	Use the checklist and complete the worksheet to collect all of the information that you need to install or upgrade.	Chapter 5, “Gathering Information Before Installation or Upgrade (Planning),” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>
(Optional) Preconfigure system information.	You can preconfigure system information to avoid being prompted for the information during the installation or upgrade.	Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information (Tasks)”
Create an install server.	Use the <code>setup_install_server(1M)</code> command to copy the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD to the install server's hard disk.  Use the <code>add_to_install_server(1M)</code> command to copy additional Oracle Solaris Software CDs and the Oracle Solaris Languages CDs to the install server's hard disk.	“Creating an Install Server With SPARC or x86 CD Media” on page 90
(Optional) Create boot servers.	If you want to install systems from the network that are not on the same subnet as the install server, you must create a boot server on the subnet to boot the systems. Use the <code>setup_install_server</code> command with the <code>-b</code> option to set up a boot server. If you are using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), a boot server is not necessary.	“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image” on page 95
Add systems to be installed from the network.	Use the <code>add_install_client</code> command to set up each system that you want to install from the network. Each system that you want to install needs to find the install server, the boot server if required, and configuration information on the network.	“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image” on page 97
(Optional) Configure the DHCP server.	If you want to use DHCP to provide system configuration and installation parameters, configure the DHCP server, then create the appropriate options and macros for your installation.  <b>Note</b> – If you want to install an x86 based system from the network with PXE, you must configure a DHCP server.	Chapter 13, “Planning for DHCP Service (Tasks),” in <i>System Administration Guide: IP Services</i>  “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47
Install the system over the network.	Begin the installation by booting the system from the network.	“Installing the System From the Network With a CD Image” on page 102

## Creating an Install Server With SPARC or x86 CD Media

The install server contains the installation image needed to install systems from the network. You must create an install server to install the Oracle Solaris software on a system from the network. You do not always need to set up a separate boot server.

---

**Note – Starting with the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release**, only a DVD is provided. Oracle Solaris Software CDs are no longer provided.

See “[Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image](#)” on page 79.

- If you are using DHCP to set installation parameters or your install server and client are on the same subnet, you do not need a separate boot server.
- If your install server and your client are not on the same subnet and you are not using DHCP, you must create separate boot servers for each subnet. You could create an install server for each subnet; however, install servers require more disk space.

### ▼ SPARC: To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 CD Media

---

**Note** – This procedure assumes that the system is running the Volume Manager. If you are not using the Volume Manager to manage media, refer to *System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems*.

- 1 **On the system that is to become the install server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

The system must include a CD-ROM drive and be part of the site's network and naming service. If you use a naming service, the system must already be in a naming service, such as NIS, NIS+, DNS, or LDAP. If you do not use a naming service, you must distribute information about this system by following your site's policies.

- 2 **Insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD in the system's drive.**
- 3 **Create a directory for the CD image.**

```
# mkdir -p install_dir_path
```

*install\_dir\_path* Specifies the directory where the CD image is to be copied

**4 Change to the Tools directory on the mounted disc.**

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
```

**5 Copy the image in the drive to the install server's hard disk.**

```
# ./setup_install_server install_dir_path
```

*install\_dir\_path* Specifies the directory where the CD image is to be copied

---

**Note** – The `setup_install_server` command indicates whether you have enough disk space available for the Oracle Solaris Software disc images. To determine available disk space, use the `df -kl` command.

---

**6 Decide if you need to make the install server available for mounting.**

- If the install server is on the same subnet as the system to be installed or you are using DHCP, you do not need to create a boot server. Proceed to [Step 7](#).
- If the install server is not on the same subnet as the system to be installed and you are not using DHCP, complete the following steps.

**a. Verify that the path to the install server's image is shared appropriately.**

```
# share | grep install_dir_path
```

*install\_dir\_path* Specifies the path to the installation image where the CD image was copied

- If the path to the install server's directory is displayed and `anon=0` is displayed in the options, proceed to [Step 7](#).
- If the path to the install server's directory is not displayed or you do not have `anon=0` in the options, continue.

**b. Make the install server available to the boot server.**

Using the `share` command, add this entry to the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file.

```
share -F nfs -o ro,anon=0 -d "install server directory" install_dir_path
```

**c. Verify that the `nfsd` daemon is running.**

- If the install server is running the current Oracle Solaris release, or compatible version, type the following command.

```
# svcs -l svc:/network/nfs/server:default
```

If the `nfsd` daemon is online, continue to [Step d](#). If the `nfsd` daemon is not online, start it.

```
# svcadm enable svc:/network/nfs/server
```

- **If the install server is running the Solaris 9 OS, or compatible version, type the following command.**

```
# ps -ef | grep nfsd
```

If the `nfsd` daemon is running, continue to [Step d](#). If the `nfsd` daemon is not running, start it.

```
# /etc/init.d/nfs.server start
```

**d. Share the install server.**

```
# shareall
```

**7 Change directories to root (/).**

```
# cd /
```

**8 Eject the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD.**

**9 Insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 2 CD in the system's CD-ROM drive.**

**10 Change to the Tools directory on the mounted CD.**

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
```

**11 Copy the CD in the CD-ROM drive to the install server's hard disk.**

```
# ./add_to_install_server install_dir_path
```

*install\_dir\_path* Specifies the directory where the CD image is to be copied

**12 Change directories to root (/).**

```
# cd /
```

**13 Eject the Oracle Solaris Software - 2 CD.**

**14 Repeat [Step 9](#) through [Step 13](#) for each Oracle Solaris Software CD that you want to install.**

**15 Insert the first Oracle Solaris Languages CD in the system's CD-ROM drive.**

**16 Change to the Tools directory on the mounted CD.**

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
```

**17 Copy the CD in the CD-ROM drive to the install server's hard disk.**

```
# ./add_to_install_server install_dir_path
```

*install\_dir\_path* Specifies the directory where the CD image is to be copied

**18 Eject the CD.****19 Repeat Step 15 through Step 18 for the second Oracle Solaris Languages CD.****20 Change directories to root (/).**

```
# cd /
```

**21 (Optional) Patch the files that are located in the miniroot on the net install image that was created by `setup_install_server`.**

Patching a file might be necessary if a boot image has problems. For step-by-step procedures, see [Chapter 7, “Patching the Miniroot Image \(Tasks\)”](#).

**22 Decide if you need to create a boot server.**

- If you are using DHCP or the install server is on the same subnet as the system to be installed, you do not need to create a boot server. Proceed to [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image” on page 97](#).
- If you are *not* using DHCP and the install server and the client are on a different subnet, you must create a boot server. Proceed to [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image” on page 95](#).

**Example 6-1 x86: Creating an Install Server With CD Media**

The following example illustrates how to create an install server by copying the following CDs to the install server's `/export/home/cdimage` directory. This example assumes that the install server is running the current Oracle Solaris release.

- Oracle Solaris Software CDs
- Oracle Solaris Languages CDs

Insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD in the system's CD-ROM drive.

```
# mkdir -p /export/home/cdimage
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./setup_install_server /export/home/cdimage
```

- If you have a separate boot server, add these steps.

1. Make the install server available to the boot server.

Using the `share` command, add this entry to the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file.

```
share -F nfs -o ro,anon=0 -d "install server directory" /export/home/cdimage
```

2. Check if the `nfsd` daemon is online. If the `nfsd` daemon is not online, start it and share it.

```
# svcs -l svc:/network/nfs/server:default
# svcadm enable svc:/network/nfs/server
# shareall
```

3. Continue with the following steps.

- If you do not need a boot server or have completed the steps for a separate boot server, continue.

```
# cd /
```

Eject the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD. Insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 2 CD in the CD-ROM drive.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./add_to_install_server /export/home/cdimage
# cd /
```

Repeat the previous commands for each Oracle Solaris Software CD that you want to install.

Insert the first Oracle Solaris Languages CD in the CD-ROM drive.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./add_to_install_server /export/home/cdimage
```

Eject the CD.

Repeat the previous commands for each Oracle Solaris Languages CD.

## More Information **Continuing the Installation**

After you set up the install server, you must add the client as an installation client. For information about how to add client systems to install over the network, see [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image” on page 97](#).

If you are not using DHCP, and your client system is on a different subnet than your install server, you must create a boot server. For more information, see [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image” on page 95](#).

**See Also** For additional information about the `setup_install_server` and the `add_to_install_server` commands, see [`install\_scripts\(1M\)`](#).

## Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image

You must create an install server to install the Oracle Solaris software on a system from the network. You do not always need to set up a boot server. A boot server contains enough of the boot software to boot systems from the network, and then the install server completes the installation of the Oracle Solaris software.

---

**Note – Starting with the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release**, only a DVD is provided. Oracle Solaris Software CDs are no longer provided.

See [“Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image”](#) on page 79.

---

- If you are using DHCP to set installation parameters or your install server and client are on the same subnet, you do not need a boot server. Proceed to [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image”](#) on page 97.
- If your install server and your client are not on the same subnet and you are not using DHCP, you must create separate boot servers for each subnet. You could create an install server for each subnet; however, install servers require more disk space.

### ▼ To Create a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image

- 1 **On the system you intend to make the boot server for the subnet, log in and become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [“Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

The system must include a local CD-ROM drive or have access to the remote current Oracle Solaris release disc images, which are normally on the install server. If you use a naming service, the system should be in the naming service. If you do not use a naming service, you must distribute information about this system by following your site's policies.

- 2 **Mount the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD image from the install server.**

```
# mount -F nfs -o ro server_name:path /mnt
```

*server\_name:path*     Is the install server name and absolute path to the disc image

- 3 **Create a directory for the boot image.**

```
# mkdir -p boot_dir_path
```

*boot\_dir\_path*     Specifies the directory where the boot software is to be copied

**4 Change to the Tools directory on the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD image.**

```
# cd /mnt/Solaris_10/Tools
```

**5 Copy the boot software to the boot server.**

```
# ./setup_install_server -b boot_dir_path
```

**-b** Specifies to set up the system as a boot server

*boot\_dir\_path* Specifies the directory where the boot software is to be copied

---

**Note** – The `setup_install_server` command indicates whether you have enough disk space available for the images. To determine available disk space, use the `df -k` command.

---

**6 Change directories to root (/).**

```
# cd /
```

**7 Unmount the installation image.**

```
# umount /mnt
```

**Example 6–2 Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With CD Media**

The following example illustrates how to create a boot server on a subnet. These commands copy the boot software from the Oracle Solaris Software for SPARC Platforms - 1 CD image to `/export/install/boot` on the system's local disk.

```
# mount -F nfs -o ro crystal:/export/install/boot /mnt
# mkdir -p /export/install/boot
# cd /mnt/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./setup_install_server -b /export/install/boot
# cd /
# umount /mnt
```

In this example, the disc is inserted and automatically mounted before the command. After the command, the disc is removed.

**More Information Continuing the Installation**

After you set up the boot server, you must add the client as an installation client. For information about how to add client systems to install over the network, see [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image”](#) on page 97.

**See Also** For additional information about the `setup_install_server` command, see [install\\_scripts\(1M\)](#).



# Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image

After you create an install server and, if necessary, a boot server, you must set up each system that you want to install from the network. Each system that you want to install needs to find the following:

---

**Note – Starting with the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release**, only a DVD is provided. Oracle Solaris Software CDs are no longer provided.

See [“Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image” on page 79](#).

---

- An install server
- A boot server if it is required
- The `sysidcfg` file if you use a `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure system information
- A name server if you use a naming service to preconfigure system information
- The profile in the JumpStart directory on the profile server if you are using the custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, installation method

Use the following `add_install_client` procedure for setting up install servers and clients.

For more options to use with this command, see the man page, [`add\_install\_client\(1M\)`](#).

## ▼ To Add Systems to Be Installed From the Network With `add_install_client` (CDs)

After you create an install server, you must set up each system that you want to install from the network.

Use the following `add_install_client` procedure for set up an x86 client to install from the network.

**Before You Begin** If you have a boot server, make sure you have shared the install server installation image. See the procedure “To Create an Install Server,” [Step 6](#).

Each system that you want to install needs to find the following items.

- An install server
- A boot server if it is required
- The `sysidcfg` file if you use a `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure system information

- A name server if you use a naming service to preconfigure system information
- The profile in the JumpStart directory on the profile server if you are using the custom JumpStart installation method

**1 On the install server or boot server, become superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

**2 If you use the NIS, NIS+, DNS, or LDAP naming service, verify that the following information about the system to be installed has been added to the naming service:**

- Host name
- IP address
- Ethernet address

For more information about naming services, see *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*.

**3 Change to the Tools directory on the current Oracle Solaris release CD image on the install server:**

```
# cd /install_dir_path/Solaris_10/Tools
install_dir_path    Specifies the path to the Tools directory
```

**4 Add the client to the install server's /etc/ethers file.**

**a. On the client, find the ethers address. The /etc/ethers map is taken from the local file.**

```
# ifconfig -a grep ether
ether 8:0:20:b3:39:1d
```

**b. On the install server, open the /etc/ethers file in an editor. Add the address to the list.**

**5 Set up the client system to be installed from the network.**

```
# ./add_install_client -d -s install_server:install_dir_path \
-c jumpstart_server:jumpstart_dir_path -p sysid_server:path \
-t boot_image_path -b "network_boot_variable=value" \
-e ethernet_address client_name platform_group
```

-d

Specifies that the client is to use DHCP to obtain the network install parameters. If you use the -d only, the add\_install\_client command sets up the installation information for client systems of the same class, for example, all SPARC client machines. To set up the installation information for a specific client, use the -d with the -e option.

For x86 clients, use this option to boot the systems from the network by using PXE network boot. The output of this option lists the DHCP options you need to create on the DHCP server.

For more information about class-specific installations by using DHCP, see [“Creating DHCP Options and Macros for Oracle Solaris Installation Parameters”](#) on page 48.

-s *install\_server:install\_dir\_path*

Specifies the name and path to the install server.

- *install\_server* is the host name of the install server
- *install\_dir\_path* is the absolute path to the current Oracle Solaris release CD image

-c *jumpstart\_server:jumpstart\_dir\_path*

Specifies a JumpStart directory for custom JumpStart installations. *jumpstart\_server* is the host name of the server on which the JumpStart directory is located. *jumpstart\_dir\_path* is the absolute path to the JumpStart directory.

-p *sysid\_server:path*

Specifies the path to the `sysidcfg` file for preconfiguring system information. *sysid\_server* is either a valid host name or an IP address for the server that contains the file. *path* is the absolute path to the directory containing the `sysidcfg` file.

-t *boot\_image\_path*

Specifies the path to an alternate boot image if you want to use a boot image other than the one in the Tools directory on the current Oracle Solaris release net installation image, CD, or DVD.

-b *“boot-property=value”*

**x86 based systems only:** Enables you to set the value of a boot property variable that you want to use to boot the client from the network. The `-b` must be used with the `-e` option.

See the [`eeprom\(1M\)`](#) man page for descriptions of boot properties.

-e *ethernet\_address*

Specifies the Ethernet address of the client that you want to install. This option enables you to set up the installation information to use for a specific client, including a boot file for that client.

The `nbp.` prefix is not used in boot file names. For example, if you specify `-e 00:07:e9:04:4a:bf` for an x86 based client, the command creates the boot file `010007E9044ABF.i86pc` in the `/tftpboot` directory. However, the current Oracle Solaris release supports the use of legacy boot files with the `nbp.` prefix.

For more information about client-specific installations by using DHCP, see [“Creating DHCP Options and Macros for Oracle Solaris Installation Parameters”](#) on page 48.

*client\_name*

Is the name of the system to be installed from the network. This name is *not* the host name of the install server.

*platform\_group*

Is the platform group of the system to be installed. A detailed list of platform groups appears in “Platform Names and Groups” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

**Example 6–3** SPARC: Adding a SPARC Install Client on a SPARC Install Server When Using DHCP (CDs)

The following example illustrates how to add an install client when you are using DHCP to set installation parameters on the network. The install client is named `basil`, which is an Ultra 5 system. The file system `/export/home/cdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools` contains the `add_install_client` command.

For more information on how to use DHCP to set installation parameters for network installations, see “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47.

```
sparc_install_server# cd /export/home/cdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools
sparc_install_server# ./add_install_client -d basil sun4u
```

**Example 6–4** Adding an Install Client That Is on the Same Subnet as Its Server (CDs)

The following example illustrates how to add an install client that is on the same subnet as the install server. The install client is named `basil`, which is an Ultra 5 system. The file system `/export/home/cdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools` contains the `add_install_client` command.

```
install_server# cd /export/home/cdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools
install_server# ./add_install_client basil sun4u
```

**Example 6–5** Adding an Install Client to a Boot Server (CDs)

The following example illustrates how to add an install client to a boot server. The install client is named `rose`, which is an Ultra 5 system. Run the command on the boot server. The `-s` option is used to specify an install server that is named `rosemary`, which contains a current Oracle Solaris release CD image in `/export/home/cdsparc`.

```
boot_server# cd /export/home/cdsparc/Solaris_10/Tools
boot_server# ./add_install_client -s rosemary:/export/home/cdsparc rose sun4u
```

**Example 6–6** x86: Adding a Single x86 Install Client on an x86 Install Server When Using DHCP (CD)

The GRUB, a feature of Oracle Solaris, bootloader does not use the `SUNW.i86pc` DHCP class name. The following example illustrates how to add an x86 install client to an install server when you are using DHCP to set installation parameters on the network.

- The `-d` option is used to specify that clients are to use the DHCP protocol for configuration. If you plan to use PXE network boot, you must use the DHCP protocol.
- The `-e` option indicates that this installation will only occur on the client with the Ethernet address `00:07:e9:04:4a:bf`.
- The `-s` option is used to specify that the clients are to be installed from the install server that is named `rosemary`.

This server contains Oracle Solaris Operating System for x86 Platforms DVD image in `/export/home/cdx86`.

```
x86_install_server# cd /export/boot/cdx86/Solaris_10/Tools
x86_install_server# ./add_install_client -d -e 00:07:e9:04:4a:bf \
-s rosemary:/export/home/cdx86 i86pc
```

The previous commands set up the client with the Ethernet address `00:07:e9:04:4a:bf` as an installation client. The boot file `010007E9044ABF.i86pc` is created on the installation server. In previous releases, this boot file was named `nbp.010007E9044ABF.i86pc`.

For more information on how to use DHCP to set installation parameters for network installations, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)” on page 47](#).

### Example 6-7 x86: Specifying a Serial Console to Use During a Network Installation (CDs)

The following example illustrates how to add an x86 install client to an install server and specify a serial console to use during the installation. This example sets up the install client in the following manner.

- The `-d` option indicates that the client is set up to use DHCP to set installation parameters.
- The `-e` option indicates that this installation will occur only on the client with the Ethernet address `00:07:e9:04:4a:bf`.
- The `-b` option instructs the installation program to use the serial port `ttya` as an input and an output device.

Add the client.

```
install_server# cd /export/boot/cdx86/Solaris_10/Tools
install_server# ./add_install_client -d -e "00:07:e9:04:4a:bf" \
-b "console=ttya" i86pc
```

For a complete description of the boot property variables and values you can use with the `-b` option, see the [`eeprom\(1M\)`](#) man page.

## More Information Continuing the Installation

If you are using a DHCP server to install the x86 based client over the network, configure the DHCP server and create the options and macros that are listed in the output of the `add_install_client -d` command. For instructions about how to configure a DHCP server to support network installations, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) on page 47.

**x86 based systems:** If you are not using a DHCP server, you must boot the system from a local Oracle Solaris OS DVD or CD.

**See Also** For additional information about the `add_install_client` command, see [`install\_scripts\(1M\)`](#).

# Installing the System From the Network With a CD Image

---

**Note – Starting with the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release**, only a DVD is provided. Oracle Solaris Software CDs are no longer provided.

See [“Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image”](#) on page 79.

---

After you add the system as an installation client, you can install the client from the network. This section describes the following tasks.

- See [“SPARC: To Install the Client Over the Network \(CDs\)”](#) on page 102 for instructions about how to boot and install SPARC based systems over the network.
- See [“x86: To Install the Client Over the Network With GRUB \(CDs\)”](#) on page 104 for instructions about how to boot and install x86 based systems over the network.

## ▼ SPARC: To Install the Client Over the Network (CDs)

**Before You Begin** This procedure assumes that you have completed the following tasks.

- Set up an install server. For instructions about how to create an install server from CD media, see [“SPARC: To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 CD Media”](#) on page 90.
- Set up a boot server or a DHCP server, if necessary. If the system you want to install is on a different subnet than the installation server, you must set up a boot server, or use a DHCP server. For instructions about how to set up a boot server, see [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a CD Image”](#) on page 95. For instructions about how to set up a DHCP server to support network installations, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) on page 47.

- Gathered or preconfigured the information you need to install. You can perform this task in one or more of the following ways.
  - Gather the information in “Checklist for Installation” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.
  - Create a `sysidcfg` file if you use a `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure system information. For information about how to create a `sysidcfg` file, see “Preconfiguring With the `sysidcfg` File” on page 18.
  - Set up a name server if you use a naming service to preconfigure system information. For information about how to preconfigure information with a naming service, see “Preconfiguring With the Naming Service” on page 43.
  - Create a profile in the JumpStart directory on the profile server if you are using the custom JumpStart installation method. For information about how to set up a custom JumpStart installation, see Chapter 3, “Preparing Custom JumpStart Installations (Tasks),” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

### 1 Turn on the client system.

If the system is currently running, bring the system to run level 0.

The `ok` prompt is displayed.

### 2 Boot the system from the network.

- To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI, type the following command.

```
ok boot net
```

- To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive text installer in a desktop session, type the following command.

```
ok boot net - text
```

- To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive text installer in a console session, type the following command.

```
ok boot net - nowin
```

The system boots from the network.

### 3 If you are prompted, answer the system configuration questions.

- If you preconfigured all of the system information, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any configuration information. See Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information (Tasks),” for more information.
- If you did not preconfigure all the system information, use the “Checklist for Installation” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* to help you answer the configuration questions.

---

**Note** – If the keyboard is self-identifying, the keyboard layout automatically configures during installation. If the keyboard is not self-identifying, you can select from a list of supported keyboard layouts during installation.

PS/2 keyboards are not self-identifying. You will be asked to select the keyboard layout during the installation.

For further information, see “[keyboard Keyword](#)” on page 27.

---

---

**Note** – During installation, you can choose the default NFSv4 domain name. Or, you can specify a custom NFSv4 domain name. For further information, see “[NFSv4 Domain Name Configurable During Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

---

If you are using the GUI, after you confirm the system configuration information, the Welcome to Oracle Solaris panel appears.

- 4 If you are prompted, answer any additional questions to complete your installation.
  - If you preconfigured all of the installation options, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any installation information. See [Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information \(Tasks\)”](#), for more information.
  - If you did not preconfigure all the installation options, use the “[Checklist for Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* to help you answer the installation questions.

**See Also** For information about how to complete an interactive installation with the Solaris installation GUI, see “[To Install or Upgrade With the Oracle Solaris Installation Program With GRUB](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*.

## ▼ **x86: To Install the Client Over the Network With GRUB (CDs)**

---

**Note** – **Starting with the Oracle Solaris 10 9/10 release**, only a DVD is provided. Oracle Solaris Software CDs are no longer provided.

See “[Installing the System From the Network With a DVD Image](#)” on page 79.

---



The Oracle Solaris installation programs for x86 based systems use the GRUB boot loader. This procedure describes how to install an x86 based system over the network with the GRUB boot loader. For overview information about the GRUB boot loader, see [Chapter 7, “SPARC and x86 Based Booting \(Overview and Planning\)”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

To install the system over the network, you must instruct the client system to boot over the network. Enable network boot on the client system by using the BIOS setup program in the system BIOS, the network adapter BIOS, or both. On some systems, you must also adjust the boot device priority list so that network boot is attempted before booting from other devices. See the manufacturer's documentation for each setup program, or watch for setup program instructions during boot.

**Before You Begin** This procedure assumes that you have completed the following tasks.

- Set up an install server. For instructions about how to create an install server from CD media, see [“To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media”](#) on page 68.
- Set up a boot server or a DHCP server, if necessary. If the system you want to install is on a different subnet than the installation server, you must set up a boot server, or use a DHCP server. For instructions about how to set up a boot server, see [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image”](#) on page 71. For instructions about how to set up a DHCP server to support network installations, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) on page 47.
- Gathered or preconfigured the information you need to install. You can perform this task in one or more of the following ways.
  - Gather the information in [“Checklist for Installation”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.
  - Create a `sysidcfg` file if you use a `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure system information. For information about how to create a `sysidcfg` file, see [“Preconfiguring With the `sysidcfg` File”](#) on page 18.
  - Set up a name server if you use a naming service to preconfigure system information. For information about how to preconfigure information with a naming service, see [“Preconfiguring With the Naming Service”](#) on page 43.
  - Create a profile in the JumpStart directory on the profile server if you are using the custom JumpStart installation method. For information about how to set up a custom JumpStart installation, see [Chapter 3, “Preparing Custom JumpStart Installations \(Tasks\)”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

This procedure also assumes that your system can boot from the network.

## 1 Turn on the system.

**2 Type the appropriate keystroke combination to enter the system BIOS.**

Some PXE-capable network adapters have a feature that enables PXE boot if you type a particular keystroke in response to a brief boot-time prompt.

**3 In the system BIOS, instruct the system to boot from the network.**

See your hardware documentation for information about how to set the boot priority in the BIOS.

**4 Exit the BIOS.**

The system boots from the network. The GRUB menu is displayed.

---

**Note** – The GRUB menu that is displayed on your system might vary from the following sample, depending on the configuration of your network installation server.

---

```
GNU GRUB version 0.95 (631K lower / 2095488K upper memory)
```

```
+-----+
| Solaris Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 /cdrom0 |
|                                         |
+-----+
```

Use the ^ and v keys to select which entry is highlighted.

Press enter to boot the selected OS, 'e' to edit the commands before booting, or 'c' for a command-line.

**5 Select the appropriate installation option.**

- **To install the Oracle Solaris OS from the network, select the appropriate Oracle Solaris entry on the menu, then press Enter.**

Select this entry if you want to install from the network installation server you set up in [“To Create an Install Server With SPARC or x86 DVD Media”](#) on page 68.

- **To install the Oracle Solaris OS from the network with specific boot arguments, follow these steps.**

You might need to set specific boot arguments if you want to modify the device configuration during the installation, and did not set these boot arguments previously with the `add_install_client` command as described in [“To Add Systems to Be Installed From the Network With `add\_install\_client` \(DVD\)”](#) on page 74.

- a. **On the GRUB menu, select the installation option you want to edit, then press e.**

Boot commands that are similar to the following text are displayed in the GRUB menu.

```
kernel /I86pc.Solaris_10/multiboot kernel/unix \
-B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot \
module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive
```

**b. Use the arrow keys to select the boot entry that you want to edit, then press e.**

The boot command that you want to edit is displayed in the GRUB edit window.

**c. Edit the command by typing the boot arguments or options you want to use.**

The command syntax for the Grub edit menu is as follows.

```
grub edit>kernel /image_directory/multiboot kernel/unix/ \
install [url|ask] -B options install_media=media_type
```

For information about boot arguments and command syntax, see [Table 9-1](#).

**d. To accept your edits and return to the GRUB menu, press Enter.**

The GRUB menu is displayed. The edits you made to the boot command are displayed.

**e. To begin the installation, type b in the GRUB menu.**

The Oracle Solaris installation program checks the default boot disk for the requirements to install or upgrade the system. If the Oracle Solaris installation cannot detect the system configuration, the program prompts you for any missing information.

When the check is completed, the installation selection screen is displayed.

**6 Select an installation type.**

The installation selection screen displays the following options.

Select the type of installation you want to perform:

```
1 Solaris Interactive
2 Custom JumpStart
3 Solaris Interactive Text (Desktop session)
4 Solaris Interactive Text (Console session)
5 Apply driver updates
6 Single user shell
```

Enter the number of your choice followed by the <ENTER> key.  
Alternatively, enter custom boot arguments directly.

If you wait 30 seconds without typing anything,  
an interactive installation will be started.

- **To install the Oracle Solaris OS, choose from the following options.**
  - **To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI, type 1, then press Enter.**
  - **To install with the interactive text installer in a desktop session, type 3, then press Enter.**  
Select this installation type to override the default GUI installer and run the text installer.
  - **To install with the interactive text installer in a console session, type 4, then press Enter.**  
Select this installation type to override the default GUI installer and run the text installer.

If you want to perform an unattended custom JumpStart installation (option 2), see *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

For detailed information about the Oracle Solaris installation GUI and text installer, see “System Requirements and Recommendations” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

The system configures the devices and interfaces, and searches for configuration files. The installation program begins. Go to [Step 7](#) to continue the installation.

- **To perform system administration tasks before your installation, choose from the following options.**

- **To update drivers or install an install time update (ITU), insert the update media, type 5, then press Enter.**

You might need to update drivers or install an ITU to enable the Oracle Solaris OS to run on your system. Follow the instructions for your driver update or ITU to install the update.

- **To perform system administration tasks, type 6, then press Enter.**

You might want to launch a single user shell if you need to perform any system administration tasks on your system before you install. For information about system administration tasks you can perform prior to installation, see *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*.

After you perform these system administration tasks, the previous list of options is displayed. Select the appropriate option to continue the installation.

## **7 If you are prompted, answer the system configuration questions.**

- If you preconfigured all of the system information, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any configuration information. See [Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information \(Tasks\)”](#) for more information.
- If you did not preconfigure all the system information, use the “Checklist for Installation” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* to help you answer the configuration questions.

---

**Note** – If the keyboard is self-identifying, the keyboard layout automatically configures during installation. If the keyboard is not self-identifying, you can select from a list of supported keyboard layouts during installation.

For further information, see “[keyboard Keyword](#)” on [page 27](#).

---

---

**Note** – During installation, you can choose the default NFSv4 domain name. Or, you can specify a custom NFSv4 domain name. For further information, see “[NFSv4 Domain Name Configurable During Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

---

If you are using the installation GUI, after you confirm the system configuration information, the Welcome to Oracle Solaris panel appears.

- 8 **If you are prompted, answer any additional questions to complete your installation.**
  - **If you preconfigured all of the installation options, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any installation information. See [Chapter 2, “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information \(Tasks\)”](#) for more information.**
  - **If you did not preconfigure all the installation options, use the “[Checklist for Installation](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* to help you answer the installation questions.**
- 9 **After the system boots and installs over the network, instruct the system to boot from the disk drive on subsequent boots.**

---

**Note** – When you boot the system after the installation, a GRUB menu lists the operating systems that are installed, including the newly-installed Oracle Solaris OS. Select which operating system you want to boot. The default selection loads if you do not make another selection.

---

## More Information **Next Steps**

If you install multiple operating systems on your machine, you need to instruct the GRUB boot loader to recognize these operating systems in order to boot. For more information, see “[Modifying Boot Behavior by Editing the GRUB Menu at Boot Time](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*.

**See Also** For information about how to complete an interactive installation with the Oracle Solaris installation GUI, see “[To Install or Upgrade With the Oracle Solaris Installation Program With GRUB](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*.



## Patching the Miniroot Image (Tasks)

---

This chapter provides a step-by-step procedure and an example to patch the miniroot image when you are setting up an install server.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- “Patching the Miniroot Image (Tasks)” on page 111
- “Patching the Miniroot Image (Example)” on page 113

### Patching the Miniroot Image (Tasks)

You might need to Patch the files that are located in the miniroot on the network installation image that was created by `setup_install_server`.

### About the Miniroot Image (Overview)

The miniroot is a minimal, bootable root (/) file system that resides on the Oracle Solaris installation media. A miniroot consists of all the Oracle Solaris software that is required to boot the system to either install or upgrade the system. The miniroot software is used by the installation media to perform a full installation of the Oracle Solaris OS. The miniroot runs only during the installation process.

You might need to patch the miniroot before installation if the boot image has problems booting or if you need to add driver and hardware support. When you patch the miniroot image, the patch is not installed on the system where the Oracle Solaris OS installation occurs or on the system that the `patchadd` command is run. Patching the miniroot image is strictly used for adding driver and hardware support to the process that performs the actual installation of the Oracle Solaris OS.

---

**Note** – This procedure is only for patching the miniroot, not for patching the complete network installation image. If you need to patch the network installation image, perform the task after the installation completes.

---

## ▼ How To Patch the Miniroot Image

Follow these steps to patch a network installation miniroot image.

---

**Note** – These steps assume that you have a system on your network that is running the current Oracle Solaris release, and that system is accessible over the network.

---

- 1 **On a system that is running the current Oracle Solaris release, log in as superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

- 2 **Change to the `Tools` directory of the installation image you created in [Step 5](#).**

```
# cd install-server-path/install-dir-path/Solaris_10/Tools
```

*install-server-path* Specifies the path to the install server system on your network, for example, `/net/installserver-1`.

- 3 **Create a new installation image, and place that image on the system that is running the current Oracle Solaris release.**

```
# ./setup_install_server remote_install_dir_path
```

*remote\_install\_dir\_path* Specifies the path on the current Oracle Solaris release in which to create the new installation image.

This command creates a new installation image on the current Oracle Solaris release. In order to patch this image, you must temporarily place this image on a system that is running the current Oracle Solaris release.

- 4 **On the current Oracle Solaris release, unpack the network installation boot archive.**

```
# /boot/solaris/bin/root_archive unpackmedia remote_install_dir_path \  
destination_dir
```

*remote\_install\_dir\_path* Specifies the path to the network installation image on the current Oracle Solaris release.

*destination\_dir* Specifies the path to the directory to contain the unpacked boot archive.



**5 On the current Oracle Solaris release, patch the unpacked boot archive.**

```
# patchadd -C destination_dir path-to-patch/patch-id
```

*path-to-patch* Specifies the path to the patch that you want to add, for example, `/var/sadm/spool`.

*patch-id* Specifies the patch ID that you want to apply.

You can specify multiple patches with the `patchadd -M` option. For more information, see [patchadd\(1M\)](#).




---

**Caution** – Don't use the `patchadd -C` command unless you have read the Patch README instructions or have contacted your local Oracle support office.

---

**6 On the current Oracle Solaris release, pack the boot archive.**

```
# /boot/solaris/bin/root_archive packmedia remote_install_dir_path \
  destination_dir
```

**7 Copy the patched archives to the installation image on the install server.**

```
# cd remote_install_dir_path
# find boot Solaris_10/Tools/Boot | cpio -pdm \
  install-server-path/install_dir_path
```

**Next Steps** After you have set up the install server and patched the miniroot, you might need to set up a boot server or add systems to be installed from the network.

- If you are using DHCP or the install server is on the same subnet as the system to be installed, you do not need to create a boot server. Proceed to [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image”](#) on page 73.
- If you are *not* using DHCP and the install server and the client are on a different subnet, you must create a boot server. Proceed to [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image”](#) on page 71.

## Patching the Miniroot Image (Example)

This example describes the steps to patch a miniroot image to create a modified miniroot.

### Patching the Miniroot Image

In this example, you perform the unpacking and packing of the miniroot on a system that is running the current release.

## ▼ How to Modify the Miniroot (Example)

This procedure shows how to install a Kernel Update (KU) patch on a Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 miniroot image. On a system that is running the Oracle Solaris 10 OS, follow these steps, but note these details.

- jmp-start1 — Is a network installation server that is running the Solaris 9 OS
- v20z-1 — Is a system that is running the Oracle Solaris 10 OS, with GRUB implemented
- v20z-1:/export/mr — Is the unpacked miniroot location
- v20z-1:/export/u1 — Is the installation image that was created, so it could be modified

The network installation image is located  
at/net/jmpstart1/export/images/solaris\_10\_u1/Solaris\_10/Tools.

- 1 **On a system that is running the current Oracle Solaris release, log in as superuser or assume an equivalent role.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

- 2 **Change to the directory where you want to unpack the miniroot and place the network installation image.**

```
# cd /net/server-1/export
```

- 3 **Create the installation and miniroot directories.**

```
# mkdir /export/u1 /export/mr
```

- 4 **Change directories to the Tools directory where the Oracle Solaris Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 installation images are located.**

```
# cd /net/jmp-start1/export/images/solaris_10/Solaris_10/Tools
```

- 5 **Create a new installation image, and place the image on the system that is running the current Oracle Solaris release.**

```
# ./setup_install_server /export/u1
Verifying target directory...
Calculating the required disk space for the Solaris_10 product
Calculating space required for the installation boot image
Copying the CD image to disk...
Copying Install Boot Image hierarchy...
Copying /boot netboot hierarchy...
Install Server setup complete
```

The installation server setup is now complete.

**6 Run the following command to unpack the miniroot.**

```
# /boot/solaris/bin/root_archive unpackmedia /export/u1 /export/mr
```

**7 Change directories.**

```
# cd /export/mr/sbin
```

**8 Make a copy of the rc2 and the suLogin files.**

```
# cp rc2 rc2.orig
# cp suLogin suLogin.orig
```

**9 Apply all required patches to the miniroot.**

```
patchadd -C /export/mr /export patchid
```

*patchid* specifies the patch ID that you want to apply.

In this example, five patches are applied to the miniroot.

```
# patchadd -C /export/mr /export/118344-14
# patchadd -C /export/mr /export/122035-05
# patchadd -C /export/mr /export/119043-10
# patchadd -C /export/mr /export/123840-04
# patchadd -C /export/mr /export/118855-36
```

**10 Export the *SVCCFG\_REPOSITORY* variable.**

```
# export SVCCFG_REPOSITORY=/export/mr/etc/svc/repository.db
```



**Caution** – The *SVCCFG\_REPOSITORY* variable must point to the location of the unpacked miniroot's *repository.db* file. In this example, that location is the */export/mr/etc/svc* directory. The *repository.db* file is located in the directory */etc/svc* under the unpacked miniroot. Failure to export this variable results in the modification of the live repository, which prevents the live system from booting.

**11 Modify the miniroot's *repository.db* file.**

```
# svccfg -s system/manifest-import setprop start/exec = :true
# svccfg -s system/filesystem/usr setprop start/exec = :true
# svccfg -s system/identity:node setprop start/exec = :true
# svccfg -s system/device/local setprop start/exec = :true
# svccfg -s network/loopback:default setprop start/exec = :true
# svccfg -s network/physical:default setprop start/exec = :true
# svccfg -s milestone/multi-user setprop start/exec = :true
```

For more information, see the *svccfg(1M)* man page.

**12 Change directories. Then, restore the original copies of the *rc2.orig* and *suLogin.orig* files.**

```
# cd /export/mr/sbin
# mv rc2.orig rc2
# mv suLogin.orig suLogin
```

- 13 Pack the modified miniroot that contains the changes you made. Place the modified miniroot in the /export/u1 directory.**

```
# /boot/solaris/bin/root_archive packmedia /export/u1 /export/mr
```

This step essentially replaces /export/u1/boot/miniroot directory, along with some other necessary files.

**Next Steps** After you have set up the install server and patched the miniroot, you might need to set up a boot server or add systems to be installed from the network.

- If you are using DHCP or the install server is on the same subnet as the system to be installed, you do not need to create a boot server. You are finished. Proceed to [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a DVD Image”](#) on page 73.
- If you are *not* using DHCP and the install server and the client are on a different subnet, you must create a boot server. Proceed to [“Creating a Boot Server on a Subnet With a DVD Image”](#) on page 71.

## Installing Over the Network (Examples)

---

This chapter provides examples that illustrate how to use DVD or CD media to install the Oracle Solaris OS over the network.

All examples in this chapter have the following conditions.

- The install server
  - Is a network installation image.
  - Runs the current Oracle Solaris release.
  - Is already part of the site's network and naming service.
- You have already gathered or preconfigured the information that you need in order to install. For further information, see [Chapter 5, “Gathering Information Before Installation or Upgrade \(Planning\),”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade*.

Choose an example from one of the following additional options.

- [“Network Installation Over the Same Subnet \(Examples\)”](#) on page 118
  - The install client is on the same subnet as the install server. Therefore, you do not need to create a boot server.
  - The network installation uses a graphical user interface (GUI) in a desktop session.
- **Network Installation Over a Different Subnet (Examples TBD)**
  - The install client is on the different subnet from the install server. Therefore, you must create a boot server.
  - The network installation uses a text installer in a desktop session

## Network Installation Over the Same Subnet (Examples)

This section includes the following examples.

- [Example 8–1: SPARC: Install on the Same Subnet \(With DVD Media\)](#)
- [Example 8–2: SPARC: Install on the Same Subnet \(With CD Media\)](#)
- [Example 8–3: x86: Install on the Same Subnet \(With DVD Media\)](#)
- [Example 8–4: x86: Install on the Same Subnet \(With CD Media\)](#)

### EXAMPLE 8-1 SPARC: Install Over the Same Subnet (With DVD Media)

This example creates a SPARC install server with SPARC DVD media.

This example has the following conditions:

- The install client is on the same subnet as the install server.
- The network installation uses a graphical user interface (GUI) in a desktop session.
- General conditions for this example are listed at [Chapter 8, “Installing Over the Network \(Examples\)”](#).

#### 1. Create and set up a SPARC install server.

This example creates an install server by copying the Oracle Solaris DVD to the install server's `/export/home/dvdsparc` directory.

- a. Insert the Oracle Solaris DVD in the SPARC system's drive.
- b. Use the following command to create a directory to contain the DVD image. This command also changes to the `Tools` directory on the mounted disc. Then the command copies the DVD image in the drive to the install server's hard disk.

```
# mkdir -p /export/home/dvdsparc
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./setup_install_server /export/home/dvdsparc
```

#### 2. Install the system with a network installation image.

In this example, you install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI.

- a. Boot the system from the network.
- b. To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI, type the following command.

```
ok bootnet - install
```

The system installs from the network.

- c. If you are prompted, answer the system configuration questions. If you preconfigured all of the system information, the installation program does not prompt you to enter any configuration information.

After you confirm the system configuration information, the Welcome to Solaris panel appears. The installation is complete.

**EXAMPLE 8-1 SPARC: Install Over the Same Subnet (With DVD Media)** (Continued)

For a more detailed explanation about the network installation procedures that are used in this example, see [Chapter 5, “Installing From the Network With DVD Media \(Tasks\)”](#).

**EXAMPLE 8-2 SPARC: Install Over the Same Subnet (With CD Media)**

This example creates a SPARC install server with SPARC CD media.

This example has the following conditions:

- The install client is on the same subnet as the install server.
- The network installation uses a graphical user interface (GUI) in a desktop session.
- General conditions for this example are listed at [Chapter 8, “Installing Over the Network \(Examples\)”](#).

**1. Create and set up a SPARC install Server.**

The following example illustrates how to create an install server by copying the CD media to the install server's `/export/home/cdsparc` directory.

- a. Insert the Oracle Solaris Software for SPARC Platforms - 1 CD in the system's CD-ROM drive.
- b. Use the following command to create a directory for the CD image. This command also changes to the `Tools` directory on the mounted disc, and copies the image in the drive to the install server's hard disk.

```
# mkdir -p /export/home/cdsparc
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./setup_install_server /export/home/cdsparc
# cd /
```

**2. Add systems to be installed from the network.**

- a. Insert the Oracle Solaris Software for SPARC Platforms - 2 CD in the CD-ROM drive.
- b. Use the following command. This command changes to the `Tools` directory on the mounted CD. The command copies the CD in the CD-ROM drive to the install server's hard disk. Then the command changes to the root (`/`) directory.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./add_to_install_server /export/home/cdsparc
# cd /
```

- c. Repeat the previous commands for each Oracle Solaris Software CD that you want to install.
- d. Insert the first Oracle Solaris Languages for SPARC Platforms CD in the CD-ROM drive.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./add_to_install_server /export/home/cdsparc
```

- e. Eject the CD.

**EXAMPLE 8-2 SPARC: Install Over the Same Subnet (With CD Media)** (Continued)

- f. Repeat the previous commands for each Oracle Solaris Languages for SPARC Platforms CD CD that you want to install.
- 3. Install the system with a network installation image.**
    - a. Boot the system from the network.
    - b. To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI, type the following command.
 

```
ok boot net
```

The system installs from the network.
    - c. If you are prompted, answer the system configuration questions.
 

After you confirm the system configuration information, the Welcome to Oracle Solaris panel appears. The installation is complete.

For a more detailed explanation about the network installation procedures that are used in this example, see [Chapter 6, “Installing From the Network With CD Media \(Tasks\).”](#)

**EXAMPLE 8-3 x86: Install Over the Same Subnet (With DVD Media)**

This example creates an x86 install server with x86 DVD media.

This example has the following conditions:

- The install client is on the same subnet as the install server.
- The network installation uses a graphical user interface (GUI) in a desktop session.
- General conditions for this example are listed at [Chapter 8, “Installing Over the Network \(Examples\).”](#)

**1. Create and set up an x86 install server.**

The following examples illustrate how to create an x86 install server by copying the Oracle Solaris Operating System for x86 Platforms DVD to the install server's `/export/home/dvdx86` directory.

- a. Insert the Oracle Solaris DVD into the system's drive.
- b. Use the following command. This command creates a directory to contain the boot image. Then this command changes to the `Tools` directory on the mounted disc. Also, the command copies the disc in the drive to the install server's hard disk by using the `setup_install_server` command:

```
# mkdir -p /export/home/dvdx86
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./setup_install_server /export/home/dvdx86
```

- c. Make the install server available to the boot server.

Using the `share` command, add this entry to the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file.



**EXAMPLE 8-3 x86: Install Over the Same Subnet (With DVD Media)** (Continued)

- `share -F nfs -o ro,anon=0 -d "install server directory" install_dir_path`
- d. Check if the `nfsd` daemon is online. If the `nfsd` daemon is not online, start it and share it.

```
# svcs -l svc:/network/nfs/server:default
# svcadm enable svc:/network/nfs/server
# shareall
# cd /
```

---

**Note** – If the install server was running the Solaris 9 OS, or compatible version, you would type the following command instead.

```
# ps -ef | grep nfsd
```

For this older release, if the `nfsd` daemon was running, you would continue to the next step. If the `nfsd` daemon was not running, you would start it.

```
# /etc/init.d/nfs.server start
```

---

## 2. Add systems to be installed from the network.

The file system `/export/home/dvdx86/` contains the `add_install_client` command. The install client is named `basil`, which is an x86 system.

- a. Add the client to the install server's `/etc/ethers` file.

On the client, find the `ethers` address. The `/etc/ethers` map is taken from the local file.

```
# ifconfig -a grep ether
ether 8:0:20:b3:39:1d
```

On the install server, open the `/etc/ethers` file in an editor. Add the address to the list.

- b. Use the following command. This command changes to the `Tools` directory on the Oracle Solaris DVD image. Then, this command sets up the client system so that it can be installed from the network.

```
install_server# cd /export/home/dvdx86/Solaris_10/Tools
install_server# ./add_install_client basil i86pc
```

## 3. Install the system with a network installation image.

The Oracle Solaris installation programs for x86 based systems use the GRUB, a feature of Oracle Solaris, boot loader. This example installs an x86 based system over the network with the GRUB boot loader.

- a. In the system BIOS, instruct the system to boot from the network.

After you exit BIOS, the system installs from the network. The GRUB menu is displayed.

- b. To install the Oracle Solaris OS from the network, select the appropriate Oracle Solaris entry on the menu, then press `Enter`.

**EXAMPLE 8-3 x86: Install Over the Same Subnet (With DVD Media)** (Continued)

The installation selection screen is displayed.

- c. To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI, type 1, then press Enter.

The installation program begins.

- d. If you are prompted, answer the system configuration questions.

After you confirm the system configuration information, the Welcome to Oracle Solaris panel appears.

After the system boots and installs over the network, instruct the system to boot from the disk drive on subsequent boots.

---

**Note** – When you boot the system after the installation, a GRUB menu lists the operating systems that are installed, including the newly-installed Oracle Solaris OS. Select which operating system you want to boot. The default selection loads if you do not make another selection.

---

For further information, see the following references.

Procedure	Reference
For a more detailed explanation about the network installation procedures that are used in this example	<a href="#">Chapter 5, “Installing From the Network With DVD Media (Tasks)”</a>
For information about how to complete an interactive installation with the Oracle Solaris installation GUI	<a href="#">“To Install or Upgrade With the Oracle Solaris Installation Program With GRUB” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Basic Installations</i></a>
For overview information about the GRUB boot loader	<a href="#">Chapter 7, “SPARC and x86 Based Booting (Overview and Planning),” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i></a>

**EXAMPLE 8-4 x86: Install Over the Same Subnet (With CD Media)**

This example creates an x86 install server with x86 CD media.

This example has the following conditions:

- The install client is on the same subnet as the install server.
- The network installation uses a graphical user interface (GUI) in a desktop session.
- General conditions for this example are listed at [Chapter 8, “Installing Over the Network \(Examples\).”](#)

1. **Create and set up an x86 install server.**

**EXAMPLE 8-4 x86: Install Over the Same Subnet (With CD Media)** (Continued)

The following steps create an install server by copying the following CDs to the install server's `/export/home/cdx86` directory.

- a. Insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD in the system's drive.
- b. Use the following command. This command creates a directory for the CD image and changes to the `Tools` directory on the mounted disc. This command then copies the image in the drive to the install server's hard disk.

```
# mkdir -p /export/home/dvdx86
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./setup_install_server /export/home/cdx86
```

- c. Insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 2 CD in the system's CD-ROM drive.
- d. Use the following command. This command changes to the `Tools` directory on the mounted CD. Then this command copies the CD in the CD-ROM drive to the install server's hard disk and changes to the root (`/`) directory.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./add_to_install_server /export/home/cdx86
# cd /
```

- e. Repeat the previous commands for each Oracle Solaris Software CD that you want to install.
- f. Insert the first Oracle Solaris Languages CD in the system's CD-ROM drive.
- g. Use the following command. This command changes to the `Tools` directory on the mounted CD. This command then copies the CD in the CD-ROM drive to the install server's hard disk.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
# ./add_to_install_server /export/home/cdx86
```

- h. Eject the CD.
- i. Repeat the previous commands for each Oracle Solaris Languages for SPARC Platforms CD that you want to install.

## 2. Add systems to be installed from the network.

In this example, the install client is named `basil`, which is an x86 system. The file system `/export/home/cdx86/Solaris_10/Tools` contains the `add_install_client` command.

- a. Add the client to the install server's `/etc/ethers` file. On the client, find the ethers address. The `/etc/ethers` map is taken from the local file.

```
# ifconfig -a grep ether
ether 8:0:20:b3:39:1d
```

- b. On the install server, open the `/etc/ethers` file in an editor. Add the address to the list.
- c. Use the following command. This command changes to the `Tools` directory on the current Oracle Solaris release CD image on the install server. Then this command adds the client system to be installed from the network.

**EXAMPLE 8-4 x86: Install Over the Same Subnet (With CD Media)** (Continued)

```
install_server# cd /export/home/cdx86/Solaris_10/Tools
install_server# ./add_install_client basil i86pc
```

**3. Install the system with a network installation image.**

This step describes how to install an x86 based system over the network with the GRUB boot loader.

- a. In the system BIOS, instruct the system to boot from the network.  
After you exit BIOS, the system installs from the network. The GRUB menu is displayed.
- b. To install the Oracle Solaris OS from the network, select the appropriate Oracle Solaris entry on the menu, then press Enter.  
The installation selection screen is displayed.
- c. To install with the Oracle Solaris interactive installation GUI, type 1, then press Enter.  
The installation program begins.
- d. If you are prompted, answer the system configuration questions.  
After you confirm the system configuration information, the Welcome to Oracle Solaris panel appears.
- e. After the system boots and installs over the network, instruct the system to boot from the disk drive on subsequent boots.

---

**Note** – When you boot the system after the installation, a GRUB menu lists the operating systems that are installed, including the newly-installed Oracle Solaris OS. Select which operating system you want to boot. The default selection loads if you do not make another selection.

---

For further information, see the following references.

Procedure	Reference
For a more detailed explanation about the network installation procedures that are used in this example	<a href="#">Chapter 6, “Installing From the Network With CD Media (Tasks)”</a>
For information about how to complete an interactive installation with the Oracle Solaris installation GUI	“To Install or Upgrade With the Oracle Solaris Installation Program With GRUB” in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Basic Installations</i>
For overview information about the GRUB boot loader	<a href="#">Chapter 7, “SPARC and x86 Based Booting (Overview and Planning),”</a> in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade</i>

# Installing From the Network (Command Reference)

---

This chapter lists the commands used to set up network installations. This chapter includes the following topics.

- “Network Installation Commands” on page 125
- “x86: GRUB Menu Commands for Installation” on page 126

## Network Installation Commands

This table describes the commands you use to install Oracle Solaris software over the network. The table also indicates to which platform the commands apply.

Command	Platform	Description
<code>add_install_client</code>	All	A command that adds network installation information about a system to an install server or boot server from the network. The <code>add_install_client(1M)</code> man page contains more information.
<code>setup_install_server</code>	All	A script that copies the current Oracle Solaris release DVD or CDs to an install server's local disk or copies the boot software to a boot server. The <code>setup_install_server(1M)</code> man page contains more information.
(CD media only) <code>add_to_install_server</code>	All	A script that copies additional packages within a product tree on the CDs to the local disk on an existing install server. The <code>add_to_install_server(1M)</code> man page contains more information.
<code>mount</code>	All	A command that enables the mounting of file systems and shows the mounted file systems, including the file system on the Oracle Solaris DVD or Oracle Solaris Software and Oracle Solaris Languages CDs. The <code>mount(1M)</code> man page contains more information.
<code>showmount -e</code>	All	A command that lists all the shared file systems that are located on a remote host. The <code>showmount(1M)</code> man page contains more information.

Command	Platform	Description
<code>prtconf -b</code>	SPARC	A command for determining a system's platform name, for example, SUNW, Ultra-5_10, or i86pc. You might need the system's platform name when you install the Oracle Solaris software. See the <a href="#">prtconf(1M)</a> man page for more information.
<code>patchadd -C net_install_image</code>	All	<p>A command to add patches to the files that are located in the miniroot, <code>Solaris_10/Tools/Boot</code>, on a net installation image of a DVD or CD that is created by <code>setup_install_server</code>. This facility enables you to patch Oracle Solaris installation commands and other miniroot-specific commands. <code>net_install_image</code> is the absolute path name of the net installation image.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> – Don't use the <code>patchadd -C</code> command unless you have read the Patch README instructions or have contacted your local Oracle support office.</p> <p>For more information, see the following references:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <a href="#">Chapter 7, “Patching the Miniroot Image (Tasks)”</a></li> <li>▪ The <a href="#">patchadd(1M)</a> man page contains more information.</li> </ul>
<code>reset</code>	SPARC	An Open Boot PROM command for resetting the system and rebooting the machine. Or, if you boot and see a series of error messages about I/O interrupts, press the Stop and A keys at the same time, and then type <code>reset</code> at the <code>ok</code> or <code>&gt;</code> PROM prompt.
<code>banner</code>	SPARC	An Open Boot PROM command that displays system information, such as model name, Ethernet address, and memory installed. You can issue this command only at the <code>ok</code> or <code>&gt;</code> PROM prompt.

## x86: GRUB Menu Commands for Installation

You can customize the network boot and installation of your system by editing the commands in the GRUB, a feature of Oracle Solaris, menu. This section describes several commands and arguments you can insert in the commands in the GRUB menu.

In the GRUB menu, you can access the GRUB command line by typing **b** at the prompt. A command line that is similar to the following output is displayed.

```
kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot kernel/unix
-B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot
module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive
```

You can edit this command line to customize your boot and installation. The following list describes several common commands you might want to use. For a complete list of boot arguments that you can use with the `-B` option, see the [eeprom\(1M\)](#) man page.

---

**Note** – To add multiple arguments with the -B option, separate the arguments with a comma.

---

TABLE 9-1 x86: GRUB Menu Commands and Options

Command/Option	Description and Examples
install	<p>Insert this option before the -B option to perform a custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, installation.</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot <b>install</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre>

TABLE 9-1 x86: GRUB Menu Commands and Options (Continued)

Command/Option	Description and Examples
<i>url ask</i>	<p>Specifies the location of the custom JumpStart files or prompts you for the location. Insert either option with the <code>install</code> option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>url</i> - Specifies the path to the files. You can specify a URL for files that are located in the following places: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Local hard disk <pre>file://jumpstart_dir_path/compressed_config_file</pre> <p>For example:</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot <b>install</b> <b>file://jumpstart/config.tar</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre> </li> <li>■ NFS server <pre>nfs://server_name:IP_address/jumpstart_dir_path/compressed_config_file</pre> <p>For example:</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot <b>install</b> <b>myserver:192.168.2.1/jumpstart/config.tar</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre> </li> <li>■ HTTP server <pre>http://server_name:IP_address/jumpstart_dir_path/ compressed_config_file&amp;proxy_info</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If you placed a <code>sysidcfg</code> file in the compressed configuration file, you must specify the IP address of the server that contains the file, as in the following example: <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot <b>install</b> <b>http://192.168.2.1/jumpstart/config.tar</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre> </li> <li>■ If you saved the compressed configuration file on an HTTP server that is behind a firewall, you must use a proxy specifier during boot. You do not need to specify an IP address for the server that contains the file. You must specify an IP address for the proxy server, as in the following example: <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot <b>install</b> <b>http://www.shadow.com/jumpstart/config.tar&amp;proxy=131.141.6.151</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>



TABLE 9-1 x86: GRUB Menu Commands and Options (Continued)

Command/Option	Description and Examples
<i>url ask (continued)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>ask</b> - When used with the <code>install</code> option, specifies that the installation program prompt you to type the location of the compressed configuration file after the system boots and connects to the network. If you use this option, you are not able to do a completely hands off JumpStart installation.            If you bypass the prompt by pressing Return, the Oracle Solaris installation program interactively configures the network parameters. The installation program then prompts you for the location of the compressed configuration file.            The following example performs a custom JumpStart and boots from a network installation image. You are prompted to input the location of the configuration file after the system connects to the network.         </li> </ul> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot <b>install ask</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre>
<code>dhcp</code>	<p>Insert this option before the <code>-B</code> option to instruct the installation programs to use a DHCP server to obtain network installation information that is needed to boot the system. If you do not specify to use a DHCP server by typing <code>dhcp</code>, the system uses the <code>/etc/bootparams</code> file or the naming service bootparams database. For example, you would not specify <code>dhcp</code> if you wanted keep a static IP address.</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot <b>dhcp</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre>
<code>- text</code>	<p>Insert this option before the <code>-B</code> option to perform a text-based installation in a desktop session.</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot - <b>text</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre>
<code>- nowin</code>	<p>Insert this option before the <code>-B</code> option to perform a text-based installation in a console session.</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot - <b>nowin</b> -B install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre>
<code>console=serial-console</code>	<p>Use this argument with the <code>-B</code> option to instruct the system to use a serial console, such as <code>ttya</code> (COM1) or <code>ttyb</code> (COM2).</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot -B <b>console=ttya</b> install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre>

TABLE 9-1 x86: GRUB Menu Commands and Options (Continued)

Command/Option	Description and Examples
<code>ata-dma-enabled=[0 1]</code>	<p>Use this argument with the <code>-B</code> option to enable or disable Advanced Technology Attachment (ATA) or Integrated Drive Electronics (IDE) devices and Direct Memory Access (DMA) during the installation.</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot -B <b>ata-dma-enabled=0</b> install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre>
<code>acpi-enum=[0 1]</code>	<p>Use this argument with the <code>-B</code> option to enable or disable Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) power management.</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot -B <b>acpi-enum=0</b> install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre>
<code>atapi-cd-dma-enabled=[0 1]</code>	<p>Use this argument with the <code>-B</code> option to enable or disable DMA for CD or DVD drives during the installation.</p> <pre>kernel /Solaris_10_x86/multiboot -B <b>atapi-cd-dma-enabled=0</b> install_media=192.168.2.1:/export/cdrom0/boot module /platform/i86pc/boot_archive</pre> <p><b>Note</b> – The DMA name <i>atapi</i> is the current variable name used for DMA. This variable is subject to change.</p>

## PART III

# Installing Over a Wide Area Network

This part describes how to use the WAN boot installation method to install a system over a wide area network (WAN).



## WAN Boot (Overview)

---

This chapter provides an overview of the WAN boot installation method. This chapter describes the following topics.

- “What Is WAN Boot?” on page 133
- “When to Use WAN Boot” on page 134
- “How WAN Boot Works (Overview)” on page 135
- “Security Configurations Supported by WAN Boot (Overview)” on page 139

### What Is WAN Boot?

The WAN boot installation method enables you to boot and install software over a wide area network (WAN) by using HTTP. By using WAN boot, you can install the Oracle Solaris OS on SPARC based systems over a large public network where the network infrastructure might be untrustworthy. You can use WAN boot with security features to protect data confidentiality and installation image integrity.

The WAN boot installation method enables you to transmit an encrypted Flash Archive, a feature of Oracle Solaris, over a public network to a remote SPARC based client. The WAN boot programs then install the client system by performing a custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, installation. To protect the integrity of the installation, you can use private keys to authenticate and encrypt data. You can also transmit your installation data and files over a secure HTTP connection by configuring your systems to use digital certificates.

To perform a WAN boot installation, you install a SPARC based system by downloading the following information from a web server over a HTTP or secure HTTP connection.

- `wanboot` program – The `wanboot` program is the second level boot program that loads the WAN boot miniroot, client configuration files, and installation files. The `wanboot` program performs tasks similar to those that are performed by the `ufsboot` or `inetboot` second level boot programs.

- WAN boot file system – WAN boot uses several different files to configure the client and retrieve data to install the client system. These files are located in the `/etc/netboot` directory of the web server. The `wanboot - cgi` program transmits these files to the client as a file system, called the WAN boot file system.
- WAN boot miniroot – The WAN boot miniroot is a version of the Oracle Solaris miniroot that has been modified to perform a WAN boot installation. The WAN boot miniroot, like the Oracle Solaris miniroot, contains a kernel and just enough software to install the Oracle Solaris environment. The WAN boot miniroot contains a subset of the software in the Oracle Solaris miniroot.
- Custom JumpStart configuration files – To install the system, WAN boot transmits `sysidcfg`, `rules.ok`, and profile files to the client. WAN boot then uses these files to perform a custom JumpStart installation on the client system.
- Flash Archive – A Flash Archive is a collection of files that you copy from a master system. You can then use this archive to install a client system. WAN boot uses the custom JumpStart installation method to install a Flash Archive on the client system. After you install an archive on a client system, the system contains the exact configuration of the master system.

---

**Note** – The `flarcreeate` command no longer has size limitations on individual files. You can create a Flash Archive that contains individual files over 4 GB.

For more information, see [“Creating an Archive That Contains Large Files” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Flash Archives \(Creation and Installation\)\*](#).

---

You then install the archive on the client by using the custom JumpStart installation method.

You can protect the transfer of the previously listed information by using keys and digital certificates.

For a more detailed description of the sequence of events in a WAN boot installation, see [“How WAN Boot Works \(Overview\)” on page 135](#).

## When to Use WAN Boot

The WAN boot installation method enables you to install SPARC based systems that are located in geographically remote areas. You might want to use WAN boot to install remote servers or clients that are accessible only over a public network.

If you want to install systems that are located on your local area network (LAN), the WAN boot installation method might require more configuration and administration than necessary. For information about how to install systems over a LAN, see [Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network \(Overview\)”](#).

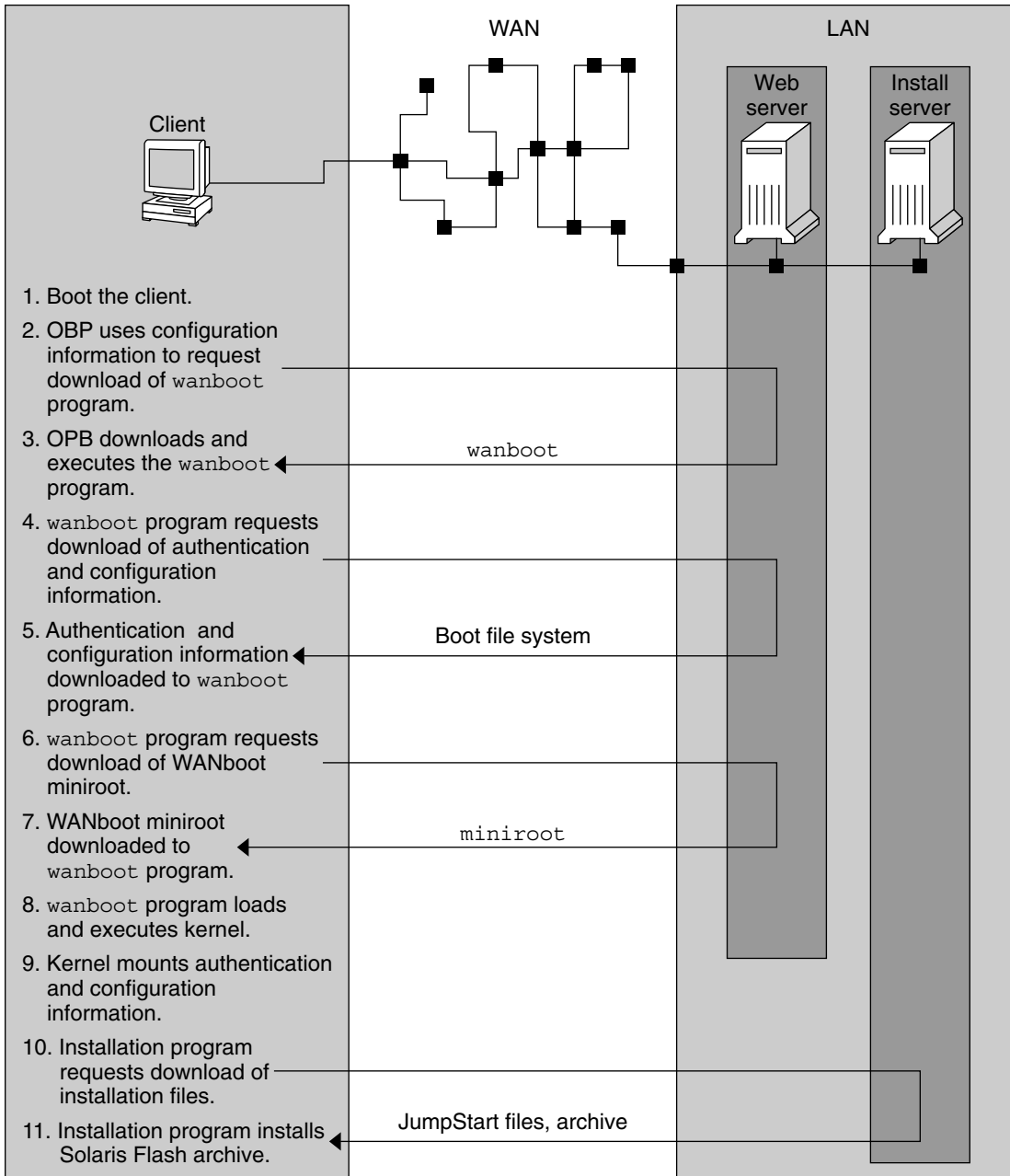
## How WAN Boot Works (Overview)

WAN boot uses a combination of servers, configuration files, Common Gateway Interface (CGI) programs, and installation files to install a remote SPARC based client. This section describes the general sequence of events in a WAN boot installation.

### Sequence of Events in a WAN Boot Installation

[Figure 10–1](#) shows the basic sequence of events in a WAN boot installation. In this figure, a SPARC based client retrieves configuration data and installation files from a web server and an install server over a WAN.

FIGURE 10-1 Sequence of Events in a WAN Boot Installation



1. You boot the client in one of the following ways.



- Boot from the network by setting network interface variables in the Open Boot PROM (OBP).
  - Boot from the network with the DHCP option.
  - Boot from a local CD-ROM.
2. The client OBP obtains configuration information from one of the following sources.
    - From boot argument values that are typed at the command line by the user
    - From the DHCP server, if the network uses DHCP
  3. The client OBP requests the WAN boot second level boot program (wanboot).  
The client OBP downloads the wanboot program from the following sources.
    - From a special web server, called the WAN boot server, by using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP)
    - From a local CD-ROM (not shown in the figure)
  4. The wanboot program requests the client configuration information from the WAN boot server.
  5. The wanboot program downloads configuration files that are transmitted by the wanboot - cgi program from the WAN boot server. The configuration files are transmitted to the client as the WAN boot file system.
  6. The wanboot program requests the download of the WAN boot miniroot from the WAN boot server.
  7. The wanboot program downloads the WAN boot miniroot from the WAN boot server by using HTTP or secure HTTP.
  8. The wanboot program loads and executes the UNIX kernel from the WAN boot miniroot.
  9. The UNIX kernel locates and mounts the WAN boot file system for use by the Oracle Solaris installation program.
  10. The installation program requests the download of a Flash Archive and custom JumpStart files from an install server.  
The installation program downloads the archive and custom JumpStart files over an HTTP or HTTPS connection.
  11. The installation program performs a custom JumpStart installation to install the Flash Archive on the client.

## Protecting Data During a WAN Boot Installation

The WAN boot installation method enables you to use hashing keys, encryption keys, and digital certificates to protect your system data during the installation. This section briefly describes the different data protection methods that are supported by the WAN boot installation method.

## Checking the Integrity of Data With a Hashing Key

To protect the data you transmit from the WAN boot server to the client, you can generate a Hashed Message Authentication Code (HMAC) key. You install this hashing key on both the WAN boot server and the client. The WAN boot server uses this key to sign the data to be transmitted to the client. The client then uses this key to verify the integrity of the data that is transmitted by the WAN boot server. After you install a hashing key on a client, the client uses this key for future WAN boot installations.

For instructions about how to use a hashing key, see [“\(Optional\) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key” on page 173](#).

## Encrypting Data With Encryption Keys

The WAN boot installation method enables you to encrypt the data you transmit from the WAN boot server to the client. You can use WAN boot utilities to create a Triple Data Encryption Standard (3DES) or Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption key. You can then provide this key to both the WAN boot server and the client. WAN boot uses this encryption key to encrypt the data sent from the WAN boot server to the client. The client can then use this key to decrypt the encrypted configuration files and security files that are transmitted during the installation.

Once you install an encryption key on a client, the client uses this key for future WAN boot installations.

Your site might not permit the use of encryption keys. To determine if your site permits encryption, ask your site's security administrator. If your site permits encryption, ask your security administrator which type of encryption key, either 3DES or AES, you should use.

For instructions on how to use encryption keys, see [“\(Optional\) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key” on page 173](#).

## Protecting Data by Using HTTPS

WAN boot supports the use of HTTP over Secure Sockets Layer (HTTPS) to transfer data between the WAN boot server and the client. By using HTTPS, you can require the server, or both the server and the client, to authenticate themselves during the installation. HTTPS also encrypts the data that is transferred from the server to the client during the installation.

HTTPS uses digital certificates to authenticate systems that exchange data over the network. A digital certificate is a file that identifies a system, either a server or client, as a system to trust during online communication. You can request a digital certificate from an external certificate authority, or create your own certificate and certificate authority.

To enable the client to trust the server and accept data from the server, you must install a digital certificate on the server. You then instruct the client to trust this certificate. You can also require

the client to authenticate itself to the servers by providing a digital certificate to the client. You can then instruct the server to accept the certificate's signer when the client presents the certificate during the installation.

To use digital certificates during the installation, you must configure your web server to use HTTPS. See your web server documentation for information about how to use HTTPS.

For information about the requirements to use digital certificates during your WAN boot installation, see [“Digital Certificate Requirements” on page 149](#). For instructions about how to use digital certificates in your WAN boot installation, see [“\(Optional\) To Use Digital Certificates for Server and Client Authentication” on page 170](#).

## Security Configurations Supported by WAN Boot (Overview)

WAN boot supports varying levels of security. You can use a combination of the security features that are supported in WAN boot to meet the needs of your network. A more secure configuration requires more administration, but also protects your system data to a greater extent. For more critical systems, or those systems you want to install over a public network, you might choose the configuration in [“Secure WAN Boot Installation Configuration” on page 139](#). For less critical systems, or systems on semi private networks, consider the configuration that is described in [“Insecure WAN Boot Installation Configuration” on page 140](#).

This section briefly describes the different configurations you can use to set the level of security for your WAN boot installation. The section also describes the security mechanisms that are required by these configurations.

### Secure WAN Boot Installation Configuration

This configuration protects the integrity of the data exchanged between the server and client, and helps keep the contents of the exchange confidential. This configuration uses an HTTPS connection, and uses either the 3DES or AES algorithm to encrypt the client configuration files. This configuration also requires the server to authenticate itself to the client during the installation. A secure WAN boot installation requires the following security features.

- HTTPS enabled on the WAN boot server and the install server
- HMAC SHA1 hashing key on the WAN boot server and the client
- 3DES or AES encryption key for the WAN boot server and the client
- Digital certificate of a certificate authority for the WAN boot server

If you want to also require client authentication during the installation, you must also use the following security features.

- Private key for the WAN boot server
- Digital certificate for the client

For a list of the tasks that are required to install with this configuration, see [Table 12–1](#).

## Insecure WAN Boot Installation Configuration

This security configuration requires the least administration effort, but provides the least secure transfer of data from the web server to the client. You do not need to create a hashing key, encryption key, or digital certificates. You do not need to configure your web server to use HTTPS. However, this configuration transfers the installation data and files over an HTTP connection, which leaves your installation vulnerable to interception over the network.

If you want the client to check the integrity of the data that is transmitted, you can use a HMAC SHA1 hashing key with this configuration. However, the Flash Archive is not protected by the hashing key. The archive is transferred insecurely between the server and the client during the installation.

For a list of the tasks that are required to install with this configuration, see [Table 12–2](#).

# Preparing to Install With WAN Boot (Planning)

---

This chapter describes how to prepare your network for a WAN boot installation. This chapter describes the following topics.

- “WAN Boot Requirements and Guidelines” on page 141
- “WAN Boot Security Limitations” on page 150
- “Gathering Information for WAN Boot Installations” on page 150

## WAN Boot Requirements and Guidelines

The section describes the system requirements to perform a WAN boot installation.

**TABLE 11-1** System Requirements for WAN Boot Installation

System and Description	Requirements
WAN boot server – The WAN boot server is a web server that provides the wanboot program, the configuration and security files, and the WAN boot miniroot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Operating system – Solaris 9 12/03 OS, or compatible version</li> <li>■ Must be configured as web server</li> <li>■ Web server software must support HTTP 1.1</li> <li>■ If you want to use digital certificates, the web server software must support HTTPS</li> </ul>

TABLE 11-1 System Requirements for WAN Boot Installation (Continued)

System and Description	Requirements
Install server – The install server provides the Flash Archive, a feature of Oracle Solaris, and custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, files that are required to install the client.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Available disk space – space for each Flash Archive</li> <li>■ Media drive – CD-ROM or DVD-ROM drive</li> <li>■ Operating system – Solaris 9 12/03 OS, or compatible version</li> </ul> <p>If the install server is a different system than the WAN boot server, the install server must meet these additional requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Must be configured as a web server</li> <li>■ Web server software must support HTTP 1.1</li> <li>■ If you want to use digital certificates, the web server software must support HTTPS</li> </ul>
Client system – The remote system you want to install over a WAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Memory - At least 1.5 GB of RAM</li> <li>■ CPU – UltraSPARC II processor minimum</li> <li>■ Hard disk – At least 2 GB of hard disk space</li> <li>■ OBP – WAN boot-enabled PROM</li> </ul> <p>If the client does not have the appropriate PROM, the client must have a CD-ROM drive.</p> <p>To determine if your client has a WAN boot-enabled PROM, see <a href="#">“To Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support” on page 161.</a></p>
(Optional) DHCP server – You can use a DHCP server to provide client configuration information.	<p>If you are using a SunOS DHCP server, you must perform one of the following tasks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Upgrade the server to be an EDHCP server.</li> <li>■ Rename Oracle vendor options to satisfy the eight-character limit on options. For more information about the WAN installation-specific Oracle vendor options, see <a href="#">“(Optional) Providing Configuration Information With a DHCP Server” on page 190.</a></li> </ul> <p>If the DHCP server is on a different subnet than the client, you must configure a BOOTP relay agent. For more information about how to configure a BOOTP relay agent, see <a href="#">Chapter 14, “Configuring the DHCP Service (Tasks),” in <i>System Administration Guide: IP Services.</i></a></p>
(Optional) Logging server – By default, all booting and installation log messages are displayed on the client console during a WAN installation. If you want to view these messages on another system, you can specify a system to serve as a logging server.	<p>Must be configured as web server.</p> <p><b>Note</b> – If you use HTTPS during your installation, the logging server must be the same system as the WAN boot server.</p>

TABLE 11-1 System Requirements for WAN Boot Installation (Continued)

System and Description	Requirements
(Optional) Proxy server – You can configure the WAN boot feature to use an HTTP proxy during the download of the installation data and files.	If the installation uses HTTPS, the proxy server must be configured to tunnel HTTPS.

## Web Server Software Requirements and Guidelines

The web server software you use on your WAN boot server and install server must meet the following requirements.

- Operating system requirements – WAN boot provides a Common Gateway Interface (CGI) program (`wanboot - cgi`) that converts data and files into a specific format that the client machine expects. To perform a WAN boot installation with these scripts, the web server software must run on the Solaris 9 12/03 OS, or compatible version.
- File size limitations – Your web server software might limit the size of the files you can transmit over HTTP. Check your web server documentation to make sure the software can transmit files that are the size of a Flash Archive.

---

**Note** – The `flarcreate` command no longer has size limitations on individual files. You can create a Flash Archive that contains individual files over 4 GB.

For more information, see “Creating an Archive That Contains Large Files” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Flash Archives (Creation and Installation)*.

---

- SSL support – If you want to use HTTPS in your WAN boot installation, the web server software must support SSL version 3.

## Server Configuration Options

You can customize the configuration of the servers that are required by WAN boot to meet your network needs. You can host all the servers on one system, or place the servers on multiple systems.

- **Single server** – If you want to centralize the WAN boot data and files on one system, you can host all the servers on the same machine. You can administer all your different servers on one system, and you only need to configure one system as a web server. However, a single server might not be able to support the volume of traffic that is required for a large number of simultaneous WAN boot installations.

- **Multiple servers** – If you want to distribute the installation data and files across your network, you can host these servers on multiple machines. You might set up a central WAN boot server, and configure multiple install servers to host Flash Archives across your network. If you host the install server and logging server on independent machines, you must configure those servers as web servers.

## Storing Installation and Configuration Files in the Document Root Directory

The `wanboot - cgi` program transmits the following files during a WAN boot installation.

- `wanboot` program
- WAN boot miniroot
- Custom JumpStart files
- Flash Archive

To enable the `wanboot - cgi` program to transmit these files you must store these files in a directory that is accessible to the web server software. One way to make these files accessible is to place these files in the *document root* on your web server.

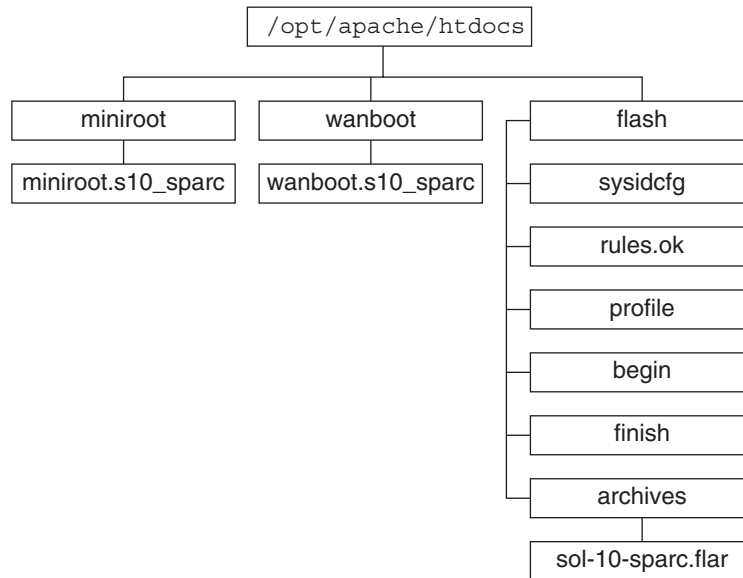
The document root, or primary document directory, is the directory on your web server where you store files you want to make available to clients. You can name and configure this directory in your web server software. See your web server documentation for more information about setting up the document root directory on your web server.

You might want to create different subdirectories of the document root directory to store your different installation and configuration files. For example, you might want to create specific subdirectories for each group of clients that you want to install. If you plan to install several different releases of the Oracle Solaris OS across your network, you might create subdirectories for each release.

[Figure 11–1](#) shows a basic sample structure for a document root directory. In this example, the WAN boot server and install server are on the same machine. The server is running the Apache web server software.



FIGURE 11-1 Sample Structure for Document Root Directory



This sample document directory uses the following structure.

- The `/opt/apache/htdocs` directory is the document root directory.
- The WAN boot miniroot (mini root) directory contains the WAN boot miniroot.
- The wanboot directory contains the wanboot program.
- The Solaris Flash (flash) directory contains the custom JumpStart files that are required to install the client and the subdirectory archives. The archives directory contains the current Oracle Solaris release Flash archive.

---

**Note** – If the WAN boot server and the install server are different systems, you might want to store the flash directory on the install server. Ensure that these files and directories are accessible to the WAN boot server.

---

For information about how to create the document root directory, see your web server documentation. For detailed instructions about how to create and store these installation files, see [“Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files” on page 175](#).

## Storing Configuration and Security Information in the /etc/netboot Hierarchy

The /etc/netboot directory contains the configuration information, private key, digital certificate, and certificate authority that are required for a WAN boot installation. This section describes the files and directories you can create in the /etc/netboot directory to customize your WAN boot installation.

### Customizing the Scope of the WAN Boot Installation

During the installation, the wanboot - cgi program searches for the client information in the /etc/netboot directory on the WAN boot server. The wanboot - cgi program converts this information into the WAN boot file system, and then transmits the WAN boot file system to the client. You can create subdirectories within the /etc/netboot directory to customize the scope of the WAN installation. Use the following directory structures to define how configuration information is shared among the clients that you want to install.

- **Global configuration** – If you want all the clients on your network to share configuration information, store the files that you want to share in the /etc/netboot directory.
- **Network-specific configuration** – If you want only those machines on a specific subnet to share configuration information, store the configuration files that you want to share in a subdirectory of /etc/netboot. Have the subdirectory follow this naming convention.

*/etc/netboot/net-ip*

In this example, *net-ip* is the IP address of the client's subnet. For example, if you want all systems on the subnet with the IP address of 192.168.255.0 to share configuration files, create a /etc/netboot/192.168.255.0 directory. Then, store the configuration files in this directory.

- **Client-specific configuration** – If you want only a specific client to use the boot file system, store the boot file system files in a subdirectory of /etc/netboot. Have the subdirectory follow this naming convention.

*/etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID*

In this example, *net-ip* is the IP address of the subnet. *client-ID* is either the client ID that is assigned by the DHCP server, or a user-specified client ID. For example, if you want a system with the client ID 010003BA152A42 on the subnet 192.168.255.0 to use specific configuration files, create a /etc/netboot/192.168.255.0/010003BA152A42 directory. Then, store the appropriate files in this directory.

### Specifying Security and Configuration Information in the /etc/netboot Directory

You specify the security and configuration information by creating the following files and storing the files in the /etc/netboot directory.

- `wanboot.conf` – This file specifies the client configuration information for a WAN boot installation.
- System configuration file (`system.conf`) – This system configuration file specifies the location of the client's `sysidcfg` file and custom JumpStart files.
- `keystore` – This file contains the client's HMAC SHA1 hashing key, 3DES or AES encryption key, and SSL private key.
- `truststore` – This file contains the digital certificates of certificate signing authorities that the client should trust. These trusted certificates instruct the client to trust the server during the installation.
- `certstore` – This file contains the client's digital certificate.

---

**Note** – The `certstore` file must be located in the client ID directory. See [“Customizing the Scope of the WAN Boot Installation” on page 146](#) for more information about subdirectories of the `/etc/netboot` directory.

---

For detailed instructions on how to create and store these files, see the following procedures.

- [“To Create the System Configuration File” on page 183](#)
- [“To Create the `wanboot.conf` File” on page 185](#)
- [“\(Optional\) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key” on page 173](#)
- [“\(Optional\) To Use Digital Certificates for Server and Client Authentication” on page 170](#)

## Sharing Security and Configuration Information in the `/etc/netboot` Directory

To install clients on your network, you might want to share security and configuration files among several different clients, or across entire subnets. You can share these files by distributing your configuration information throughout the `/etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID`, `/etc/netboot/net-ip`, and `/etc/netboot` directories. The `wanboot-cgi` program searches these directories for the configuration information that best fits the client, and uses that information during the installation.

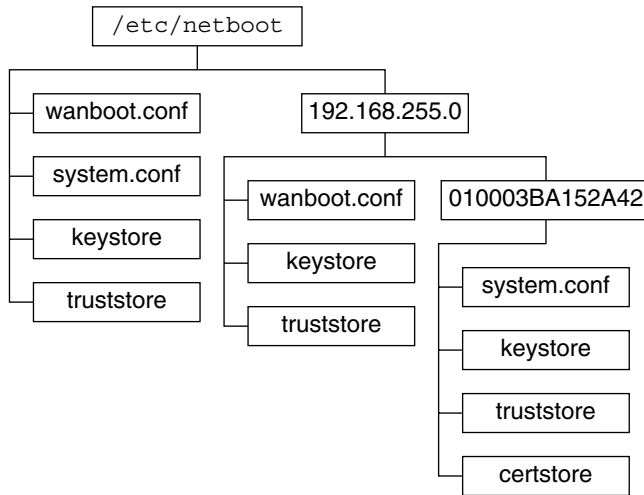
The `wanboot-cgi` program searches for client information in the following order.

1. `/etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID` – The `wanboot-cgi` program first checks for configuration information that is specific to the client machine. If the `/etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID` directory contains all the client configuration information, the `wanboot-cgi` program does not check for configuration information elsewhere in the `/etc/netboot` directory.
2. `/etc/netboot/net-ip` – If all the required information is not located in the `/etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID` directory, the `wanboot-cgi` program then checks for subnet configuration information in the `/etc/netboot/net-ip` directory.

3. `/etc/netboot` – If the remaining information is not located in the `/etc/netboot/net-ip` directory, the `wanboot - cgi` program then checks for global configuration information in the `/etc/netboot` directory.

Figure 11–2 demonstrates how you can set up the `/etc/netboot` directory to customize your WAN boot installations.

FIGURE 11–2 Sample `/etc/netboot` Directory



The `/etc/netboot` directory layout in Figure 11–2 enables you to perform the following WAN boot installations.

- When you install the client 010003BA152A42, the `wanboot - cgi` program uses the following files in the `/etc/netboot/192.168.255.0/010003BA152A42` directory.
  - `system.conf`
  - `keystore`
  - `truststore`
  - `certstore`

The `wanboot - cgi` program then uses the `wanboot.conf` file in the `/etc/netboot/192.168.255.0` directory.

- When you install a client that is located on the 192.168.255.0 subnet, the `wanboot - cgi` program uses the `wanboot.conf`, `keystore`, and `truststore` files in the `/etc/netboot/192.168.255.0` directory. The `wanboot - cgi` program then uses the `system.conf` file in the `/etc/netboot` directory.
- When you install a client machine that is not located on the 192.168.255.0 subnet, the `wanboot - cgi` program uses the following files in the `/etc/netboot` directory.

- `wanboot.conf`
- `system.conf`
- `keystore`
- `truststore`

## Storing the wanboot - cgi Program

The wanboot - cgi program transmits the data and files from the WAN boot server to the client. You must ensure that this program is in a directory on the WAN boot server that is accessible to the client. One method to make this program accessible to the client is to store this program in the `cgi-bin` directory of the WAN boot server. You might need to configure your web server software to use the wanboot - cgi program as a CGI program. See your web server documentation for information about CGI program requirements.

## Digital Certificate Requirements

If you want to add security to your WAN boot installation, you can use digital certificates to enable server and the client authentication. WAN boot can use a digital certificate to establish the identity of the server or the client during an online transaction. Digital certificates are issued by a certificate authority (CA). These certificates contain a serial number, expiration dates, a copy of the certificate holder's public key, and the certificate authority's digital signature.

If you want to require server or both client and server authentication during your installation, you must install digital certificates on the server. Follow these guidelines when you use digital certificates.

- If you want to use digital certificates, the digital certificates must be formatted as part of a Public-Key Cryptography Standards #12 (PKCS#12) file.
- If you create your own certificates, you must create the certificates as PKCS#12 files.
- If you receive your certificates from third-party certificate authorities, request your certificates in the PKCS#12 format.

For detailed instructions on how to use PKCS#12 certificates during your WAN boot installation, see [“\(Optional\) To Use Digital Certificates for Server and Client Authentication” on page 170](#).

## WAN Boot Security Limitations

While WAN boot provides several different security features, WAN boot does not address these potential insecurities.

- **Denial of service (DoS) attacks** – A denial of service attack can take many forms, with the goal of preventing users from accessing a specific service. A DoS attack can overwhelm a network with large amounts of data, or aggressively consume limited resources. Other DoS attacks manipulate the data that is transmitted between systems in transit. The WAN boot installation method does not protect servers or clients from DoS attacks.
- **Corrupted binaries on the servers** – The WAN boot installation method does not check the integrity of the WAN boot miniroot or the Flash Archive before you perform your installation. Before you perform your installation, check the integrity of your Oracle Solaris binaries against the Oracle Solaris Fingerprint Database at My Oracle Support (MOS) at <http://support.oracle.com>.
- **Encryption key and hashing key privacy** – If you use encryption keys or a hashing key with WAN boot, you must type the key value on the command line during your installation. Follow the precautions that are necessary for your network to make sure that these key values remain private.
- **Compromise of the network naming service** – If you use a naming service on your network, check the integrity of your name servers before you perform your WAN boot installation.

## Gathering Information for WAN Boot Installations

You need to gather a wide variety of information to configure your network for a WAN boot installation. You might want to write down this information as you prepare to install over a WAN.

Use the following worksheets to record the WAN boot installation information for your network.

- [Table 11-2](#)
- [Table 11-3](#)

TABLE 11-2 Worksheet for Collecting Server Information

Information Needed	Notes
Install server information	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Path to the WAN boot miniroot on install server</li> <li>▪ Path to the custom JumpStart files on the install server</li> </ul>	

TABLE 11-2 Worksheet for Collecting Server Information (Continued)

Information Needed	Notes
WAN boot server information	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Path to the wanboot program on the WAN boot server</li> <li>■ URL of the wanboot - cgi program on the WAN boot server</li> <li>■ Path to the client's subdirectory in the /etc/netboot hierarchy on the WAN boot server</li> <li>■ (Optional) File name of the PKCS#12 certificate file</li> <li>■ (Optional) Host names of any machines other than the WAN boot server that are required for WAN installation</li> <li>■ (Optional) IP address and TCP port number of the network's proxy server</li> </ul>	
Optional server information	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ URL of the bootlog - cgi script on logging server</li> <li>■ IP address and TCP port number of the network's proxy server</li> </ul>	

TABLE 11-3 Worksheet for Collecting Client Information

Information	Notes
IP address for the client's subnet	
IP address for the client's router	
IP address of the client	
Subnet mask for the client	
Host name for the client	
MAC address of the client	





# Installing With WAN Boot (Tasks)

---

This chapter describes the following tasks that are necessary to prepare your network for a WAN boot installation.

- “Installing Over a Wide Area Network (Task Maps)” on page 153
- “Configuring the WAN Boot Server” on page 157
- “Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files” on page 175
- “Creating the Configuration Files” on page 183
- “(Optional) Providing Configuration Information With a DHCP Server” on page 190
- “(Optional) To Configure the WAN Boot Logging Server” on page 168

## Installing Over a Wide Area Network (Task Maps)

The following tables list the tasks you need to perform to prepare for a WAN boot installation.

- For a list of the tasks you need to perform to prepare for a secure WAN boot installation, see [Table 12-1](#).

For a description of a secure WAN boot installation over HTTPS, see “[Secure WAN Boot Installation Configuration](#)” on page 139.

- For a list of the tasks you need to perform to prepare for an insecure WAN boot installation, see [Table 12-2](#).

For a description of an insecure WAN boot installation, see “[Insecure WAN Boot Installation Configuration](#)” on page 140.

To use a DHCP server or a logging server, complete the optional tasks that are listed at the bottom of each table.

TABLE 12-1 Task Map: Preparing to Perform a Secure WAN Boot Installation

Task	Description	For Instructions
Decide what security features you want to use in your installation.	Review the security features and configurations to decide what level of security you want to use in your WAN boot installation.	“Protecting Data During a WAN Boot Installation” on page 137 “Security Configurations Supported by WAN Boot (Overview)” on page 139
Collect WAN boot installation information.	Complete the worksheet to record all the information you need to perform a WAN boot installation.	“Gathering Information for WAN Boot Installations” on page 150
Create the document root directory on the WAN boot server.	Create the document root directory and any subdirectories to serve the configuration and installation files.	“Creating the Document Root Directory” on page 157
Create the WAN boot miniroot.	Use the <code>setup_install_server</code> command to create the WAN boot miniroot.	“SPARC: To Create a WAN Boot Miniroot” on page 158
Verify that the client system supports WAN boot.	Check the client OBP for boot argument support of WAN boot.	“To Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support” on page 161
Install the wanboot program on the WAN boot server.	Copy the wanboot program to the document root directory of the WAN boot server.	“Installing the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server” on page 162
Install the wanboot - cgi program on the WAN boot server.	Copy the wanboot - cgi program to the WAN boot server's CGI directory.	“To Copy the wanboot - cgi Program to the WAN Boot Server” on page 168
(Optional) Set up the logging server.	Configure a dedicated system for displaying boot and installation log messages.	“(Optional) To Configure the WAN Boot Logging Server” on page 168
Set up the <code>/etc/netboot</code> hierarchy.	Populate the <code>/etc/netboot</code> hierarchy with the configuration and security files that are required for a WAN boot installation.	“Creating the <code>/etc/netboot</code> Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165
Configure the web server to use secure HTTP for a more secure WAN boot installation.	Identify the web server requirements that are necessary to perform a WAN installation with HTTPS.	“(Optional) Protecting Data by Using HTTPS” on page 169
Format digital certificates for a more secure WAN boot installation.	Split PKCS#12 file into a private key and a certificate to use with the WAN installation.	“(Optional) To Use Digital Certificates for Server and Client Authentication” on page 170

TABLE 12-1 Task Map: Preparing to Perform a Secure WAN Boot Installation (Continued)

Task	Description	For Instructions
Create a hashing key and an encryption key for a more secure WAN boot installation.	Use the <code>wanbootutil keygen</code> command to create HMAC SHA1, 3DES, or AES keys.	“(Optional) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key” on page 173
Create the Flash Archive.	Use the <code>flarc create</code> command to create an archive of the software that you want to install on the client.	“To Create the Flash Archive” on page 176
Create the installation files for the custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, installation.	Use a text editor to create the following files: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>sysidcfg</code></li> <li>■ <code>profile</code></li> <li>■ <code>rules.ok</code></li> <li>■ <code>begin scripts</code></li> <li>■ <code>finish scripts</code></li> </ul>	“To Create the <code>sysidcfg</code> File” on page 178 “To Create the Profile” on page 179 “To Create the <code>rules</code> File” on page 180 “(Optional) Creating Begin and Finish Scripts” on page 183
Create the system configuration file.	Set the configuration information in the <code>system.conf</code> file.	“To Create the System Configuration File” on page 183
Create the WAN boot configuration file.	Set the configuration information in the <code>wanboot.conf</code> file.	“To Create the <code>wanboot.conf</code> File” on page 185
(Optional) Configure the DHCP server to support a WAN boot installation.	Set Oracle vendor options and macros in the DHCP server.	“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47

TABLE 12-2 Task Map: Preparing to Perform an Insecure WAN Boot Installation

Task	Description	For Instructions
Decide what security features you want to use in your installation.	Review the security features and configurations to decide what level of security you want to use in your WAN boot installation.	“Protecting Data During a WAN Boot Installation” on page 137 “Security Configurations Supported by WAN Boot (Overview)” on page 139
Collect WAN boot installation information.	Complete the worksheet to record all the information you need to perform a WAN boot installation.	“Gathering Information for WAN Boot Installations” on page 150
Create the document root directory on the WAN boot server.	Create the document root directory and any subdirectories to serve the configuration and installation files.	“Creating the Document Root Directory” on page 157

TABLE 12-2 Task Map: Preparing to Perform an Insecure WAN Boot Installation (Continued)

Task	Description	For Instructions
Create the WAN boot miniroot.	Use the <code>setup_install_server</code> command to create the WAN boot miniroot.	“SPARC: To Create a WAN Boot Miniroot” on page 158
Verify that the client system supports WAN boot.	Check the client OBP for boot argument support of WAN boot.	“To Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support” on page 161
Install the wanboot program on the WAN boot server.	Copy the wanboot program to the document root directory of the WAN boot server.	“Installing the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server” on page 162
Install the wanboot - cgi program on the WAN boot server.	Copy the wanboot - cgi program to the WAN boot server's CGI directory.	“To Copy the wanboot - cgi Program to the WAN Boot Server” on page 168
(Optional) Set up the logging server.	Configure a dedicated system for displaying boot and installation log messages.	“(Optional) To Configure the WAN Boot Logging Server” on page 168
Set up the /etc/netboot hierarchy.	Populate the /etc/netboot hierarchy with the configuration and security files that are required for a WAN boot installation.	“Creating the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165
(Optional) Create a hashing key.	Use the <code>wanbootutil keygen</code> command to create HMAC SHA1 key.  For insecure installations that check data integrity, complete this task to create an HMAC SHA1 hashing key.	“(Optional) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key” on page 173
Create the Flash Archive.	Use the <code>flarc</code> command to create an archive of the software that you want to install on the client.	“To Create the Flash Archive” on page 176
Create the installation files for the custom JumpStart installation.	Use a text editor to create the following files: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>sysidcfg</code></li> <li>■ <code>profile</code></li> <li>■ <code>rules.ok</code></li> <li>■ <code>begin scripts</code></li> <li>■ <code>finish scripts</code></li> </ul>	“To Create the <code>sysidcfg</code> File” on page 178 “To Create the Profile” on page 179 “To Create the <code>rules</code> File” on page 180 “(Optional) Creating Begin and Finish Scripts” on page 183
Create the system configuration file.	Set the configuration information in the <code>system.conf</code> file.	“To Create the System Configuration File” on page 183

TABLE 12–2 Task Map: Preparing to Perform an Insecure WAN Boot Installation (Continued)

Task	Description	For Instructions
Create the WAN boot configuration file.	Set the configuration information in the <code>wanboot.conf</code> file.	<a href="#">“To Create the <code>wanboot.conf</code> File” on page 185</a>
(Optional) Configure the DHCP server to support a WAN boot installation.	Set Oracle vendor options and macros in the DHCP server.	<a href="#">“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47</a>

## Configuring the WAN Boot Server

The WAN boot server is a web server that provides the boot and configuration data during a WAN boot installation. For a list of the system requirements for the WAN boot server, see [Table 11–1](#).

This section describes the following tasks required to configure the WAN boot server for a WAN boot installation.

- [“Creating the Document Root Directory” on page 157](#)
- [“Creating the WAN Boot Miniroot” on page 158](#)
- [“Installing the `wanboot` Program on the WAN Boot Server” on page 162](#)
- [“Creating the `/etc/netboot` Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165](#)
- [“Copying the WAN Boot CGI Program to the WAN Boot Server” on page 167](#)
- [“\(Optional\) Protecting Data by Using HTTPS” on page 169](#)

### Creating the Document Root Directory

To serve the configuration and installation files, you must make these files accessible to the web server software on the WAN boot server. One method to make these files accessible is to store them in the WAN boot server’s document root directory.

If you want to use a document root directory to serve the configuration and installation files, you must create this directory. See your web server documentation for information about how to create the document root directory. For detailed information about how to design your document root directory, see [“Storing Installation and Configuration Files in the Document Root Directory” on page 144](#).

For an example of how to set up this directory, see [“Create the Document Root Directory” on page 215](#).

After you create the document root directory, create the WAN boot miniroot. For instructions, see [“Creating the WAN Boot Miniroot” on page 158](#).

## Creating the WAN Boot Miniroot

WAN boot uses a special Oracle Solaris miniroot that has been modified to perform a WAN boot installation. The WAN boot miniroot contains a subset of the software in the Oracle Solaris miniroot. To perform a WAN boot installation, you must copy the miniroot from the Oracle Solaris DVD or the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD to the WAN boot server. Use the `-w` option to the `setup_install_server` command to copy the WAN boot miniroot from the Oracle Solaris software media to your system's hard disk.

### ▼ SPARC: To Create a WAN Boot Miniroot

This procedure creates a SPARC WAN boot miniroot with SPARC media. If you want to serve a SPARC WAN boot miniroot from an x86-based server, you must create the miniroot on a SPARC machine. After you create the miniroot, copy the miniroot to the document root directory on the x86-based server.

**Before You Begin** This procedure assumes that the WAN boot server is running the Volume Manager. If you are not using the Volume Manager, see *System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems*.

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role on the WAN boot server.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “Configuring RBAC (Task Map)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

The system must meet the following requirements.

- Include a CD-ROM or DVD-ROM drive
- Be part of the site's network and naming service
  - If you use a naming service, the system must already be in a naming service, such as NIS, NIS+, DNS, or LDAP. If you do not use a naming service, you must distribute information about this system by following your site's policies.

#### 2 Insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD or the Oracle Solaris DVD in the install server's drive.

#### 3 Create a directory for the WAN boot miniroot and Oracle Solaris installation image.

```
# mkdir -p wan-dir-path install-dir-path
```

`-p` Instructs the `mkdir` command to create all the necessary parent directories for the directory you want to create.

`wan-dir-path` Specifies the directory where the WAN boot miniroot is to be created on the install server. This directory needs to accommodate miniroots that are typically 250 MB in size.

*install-dir-path* Specifies the directory on the install server where the Oracle Solaris software image is to be copied. This directory can be removed later in this procedure.

#### 4 Change to the `Tools` directory on the mounted disc.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
```

In the previous example, `cdrom0` is the path to the drive that contains the Oracle Solaris OS media.

#### 5 Copy the WAN boot miniroot and the Oracle Solaris software image to the WAN boot server's hard disk.

```
# ./setup_install_server -w wan-dir-path install-dir-path
```

*wan-dir-path* Specifies the directory where the WAN boot miniroot is to be copied

*install-dir-path* Specifies the directory where the Oracle Solaris software image is to be copied

---

**Note** – The `setup_install_server` command indicates whether you have enough disk space available for the Oracle Solaris Software disc images. To determine available disk space, use the `df -k` command.

---

The `setup_install_server -w` command creates the WAN boot miniroot and a network installation image of the Oracle Solaris software.

#### 6 (Optional) Remove the network installation image.

You do not need the Oracle Solaris software image to perform a WAN installation with a Flash Archive. You can free up disk space if you do not plan to use the network installation image for other network installations. Type the following command to remove the network installation image.

```
# rm -rf install-dir-path
```

#### 7 Make the WAN boot miniroot available to the WAN boot server in one of the following ways.

- **Create a symbolic link to the WAN boot miniroot in the document root directory of the WAN boot server.**

```
# cd /document-root-directory/miniroot
# ln -s /wan-dir-path/miniroot .
```

*document-root-directory/miniroot* Specifies the directory in the WAN boot server's document root directory where you want to link to the WAN boot miniroot

*/wan-dir-path/miniroot* Specifies the path to the WAN boot miniroot

- **Move the WAN boot miniroot to the document root directory on the WAN boot server.**

```
# mv /wan-dir-path/miniroot /document-root-directory/miniroot/miniroot-name
```

<i>wan-dir-path/miniroot</i>	Specifies the path to the WAN boot miniroot.
<i>/document-root-directory/miniroot/</i>	Specifies the path to the WAN boot miniroot directory in the WAN boot server's document root directory.
<i>miniroot-name</i>	Specifies the name of the WAN boot miniroot. Name the file descriptively, for example <code>miniroot.s10_sparc</code> .

### Example 12-1 Creating the WAN Boot Miniroot

Use the `setup_install_server(1M)` with the `-w` option to copy the WAN boot miniroot and the Oracle Solaris software image to the `/export/install/Solaris_10` directory of `wanserver-1`.

Insert the Oracle Solaris Software media in the media drive that is attached to `wanserver-1`. Type the following commands.

```
wanserver-1# mkdir -p /export/install/cdrom0
wanserver-1# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
wanserver-1# ./setup_install_server -w /export/install/cdrom0/miniroot \
/export/install/cdrom0
```

Move the WAN boot miniroot to the document root directory (`/opt/apache/htdocs/`) of the WAN boot server. In this example the name the WAN boot miniroot is set to `miniroot.s10_sparc`.

```
wanserver-1# mv /export/install/cdrom0/miniroot/miniroot \
/opt/apache/htdocs/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc
```

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create the WAN boot miniroot, verify that the client OpenBoot PROM (OBP) supports WAN boot. For instructions, see [“Verifying WAN Boot Support on the Client” on page 161](#).

**See Also** For additional information about the `setup_install_server` command, see [install\\_scripts\(1M\)](#).



## Verifying WAN Boot Support on the Client

To perform an unattended WAN boot installation, the client system's OpenBoot PROM (OBP) must support WAN boot. If the client's OBP does not support WAN boot, you can perform a WAN boot installation by providing the necessary programs on a local CD.

You can determine if the client supports WAN boot by checking the client's OBP configuration variables. Perform the following procedure to check the client for WAN boot support.

### ▼ To Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support

This procedure describes how to determine if the client OBP supports WAN boot.

#### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

#### 2 Check the OBP configuration variables for WAN boot support.

```
# eeprom | grep network-boot-arguments
```

- If the variable `network-boot-arguments` is displayed, or if the previous command returns the output `network-boot-arguments: data not available`, the OBP supports WAN boot installations. You do not need to update the OBP before you perform your WAN boot installation.
- If the previous command does not return any output, the OBP does not support WAN boot installations. You must perform one of the following tasks.
  - Update the client OBP. For those clients who do have an OBP that is capable of supporting WAN boot installations, see your system documentation for information about how to update the OBP.

---

**Note** – Not all client OBPs support WAN Boot. For those clients use the next option.

---

- After you complete the preparation tasks and are ready to install the client, perform the WAN boot installation from the Oracle Solaris Software CD1 or DVD. This option works in all cases when the current OBP does not provide WAN Boot support.

For instructions about how to boot the client from CD1, see [“To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With Local CD Media” on page 207](#). To continue preparing for the WAN boot installation, see [“Creating the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165](#).

### Example 12-2 Verifying OBP Support for WAN Boot on the Client

The following command shows how to check the client OBP for WAN boot support.

```
# eeprom | grep network-boot-arguments
network-boot-arguments: data not available
```

In this example, the output `network-boot-arguments: data not available` indicates that the client OBP supports WAN boot.

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you verify that the client OBP supports WAN boot, you must copy the wanboot program to the WAN boot server. For instructions, see [“Installing the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server” on page 162](#).

If the client OBP does not support WAN boot, you do not need to copy the wanboot program to the WAN boot server. You must provide the wanboot program to the client on a local CD. To continue the installation, see [“Creating the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165](#).

**See Also** For additional information about the `setup_install_server` command, see [Chapter 4, “Installing From the Network \(Overview\)”](#).

## Installing the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server

WAN boot uses a special second-level boot program (wanboot) to install the client. The wanboot program loads the WAN boot miniroot, client configuration files, and installation files that are required to perform a WAN boot installation.

To perform a WAN boot installation, you must provide the wanboot program to the client during the installation. You can provide this program to the client in the following ways.

- If your client's PROM supports WAN boot, you can transmit the program from the WAN boot server to the client. You must install the wanboot program on the WAN boot server.

To check if your client's PROM supports WAN boot, see [“To Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support” on page 161](#).

- If your client's PROM does not support WAN boot, you must provide the program to the client on a local CD. If your client's PROM does not support WAN boot, go to [“Creating the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165](#) to continue preparing for your installation.

## ▼ **SPARC: To Install the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server**

This procedure describes how to copy the wanboot program from Oracle Solaris media to the WAN boot server.

This procedure assumes that the WAN boot server is running the Volume Manager. If you are not using the Volume Manager, see [System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems](#).

**Before You Begin** Verify that your client system supports WAN boot. See [“To Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support” on page 161](#) for more information.

### 1 **Become superuser or assume an equivalent role on the install server.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [“Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)” in System Administration Guide: Security Services](#).

---

### 2 **Insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD or the Oracle Solaris DVD in the install server's drive.**

### 3 **Change to the sun4u platform directory on the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD or the Oracle Solaris DVD.**

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools/Boot/platform/sun4u/
```

### 4 **Copy the wanboot program to the install server.**

```
# cp wanboot /document-root-directory/wanboot/wanboot-name
```

*document-root-directory* Specifies the document root directory of the WAN boot server.

*wanboot-name* Specifies the name of the wanboot program. Name this file descriptively, for example, wanboot.s10\_sparc.

### 5 **Make the wanboot program available to the WAN boot server in one of the following ways.**

- Create a symbolic link to the wanboot program in the document root directory of the WAN boot server.

```
# cd /document-root-directory/wanboot
# ln -s /wan-dir-path/wanboot .
```

<i>document-root-directory/wanboot</i>	Specifies the directory in the WAN boot server's document root directory where you want to link to the wanboot program
<i>/wan-dir-path/wanboot</i>	Specifies the path to the wanboot program
■ Move the WAN boot miniroot to the document root directory on the WAN boot server.	
<pre># mv /wan-dir-path/wanboot /document-root-directory/wanboot/wanboot-name</pre>	
<i>wan-dir-path/wanboot</i>	Specifies the path to the wanboot program
<i>/document-root-directory/wanboot/</i>	Specifies the path to the wanboot program directory in the WAN boot server's document root directory.
<i>wanboot-name</i>	Specifies the name of the wanboot program. Name the file descriptively, for example <code>wanboot.s10_sparc</code> .

### Example 12-3 Installing the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server

To install the wanboot program on the WAN boot server, copy the program from the Oracle Solaris Software media to the WAN boot server's document root directory.

Insert the Oracle Solaris DVD or the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD in the media drive that is attached to `wanserver-1` and type the following commands.

```
wanserver-1# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools/Boot/platform/sun4u/
wanserver-1# cp wanboot /opt/apache/htdocs/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc
```

In this example, the name of the wanboot program is set to `wanboot.s10_sparc`.

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you install the wanboot program on the WAN boot server, you must create the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy on the WAN boot server. For instructions, see [“Creating the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server”](#) on page 165.

**See Also** For overview information about the wanboot program, see [“What Is WAN Boot?”](#) on page 133.

## Creating the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server

During the installation, WAN boot refers to the contents of the /etc/netboot hierarchy on the web server for instructions about how to perform the installation. This directory contains the configuration information, private key, digital certificate, and certificate authority required for a WAN boot installation. During the installation, the wanboot - cgi program converts this information into the WAN boot file system. The wanboot - cgi program then transmits the WAN boot file system to the client.

You can create subdirectories within the /etc/netboot directory to customize the scope of the WAN installation. Use the following directory structures to define how configuration information is shared among the clients that you want to install.

- **Global configuration** – If you want all the clients on your network to share configuration information, store the files that you want to share in the /etc/netboot directory.
- **Network-specific configuration** – If you want only those machines on a specific subnet to share configuration information, store the configuration files that you want to share in a subdirectory of /etc/netboot. Have the subdirectory follow this naming convention.

*/etc/netboot/net-ip*

In this example, *net-ip* is the IP address of the client's subnet.

- **Client-specific configuration** – If you want only a specific client to use the boot file system, store the boot file system files in a subdirectory of /etc/netboot. Have the subdirectory follow this naming convention.

*/etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID*

In this example, *net-ip* is the IP address of the subnet. *client-ID* is either the client ID that is assigned by the DHCP server, or a user-specified client ID.

For detailed planning information about these configurations, see [“Storing Configuration and Security Information in the /etc/netboot Hierarchy”](#) on page 146.

The following procedure describes how to create the /etc/netboot hierarchy.

### ▼ To Create the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server

Follow these steps to create the /etc/netboot hierarchy.

- 1 **Become superuser or assume an equivalent role on the WAN boot server.**

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [“Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

**2 Create the `/etc/netboot` directory.**

```
# mkdir /etc/netboot
```

**3 Change the permissions of the `/etc/netboot` directory to 700.**

```
# chmod 700 /etc/netboot
```

**4 Change the owner of the `/etc/netboot` directory to the web server owner.**

```
# chown web-server-user:web-server-group /etc/netboot/
```

*web-server-user* Specifies the user owner of the web server process

*web-server-group* Specifies the group owner of the web server process

**5 Exit the superuser role.**

```
# exit
```

**6 Assume the user role of the web server owner.****7 Create the client subdirectory of the `/etc/netboot` directory.**

```
# mkdir -p /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID
```

`-p` Instructs the `mkdir` command to create all the necessary parent directories for the directory you want to create.

(Optional) *net-ip* Specifies the network IP address of the client's subnet.

(Optional) *client-ID* Specifies the client ID. The client ID can be a user-defined value or the DHCP client ID. The *client-ID* directory must be a subdirectory of the *net-ip* directory.

**8 For each directory in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy, change the permissions to 700.**

```
# chmod 700 /etc/netboot/dir-name
```

*dir-name* Specifies the name of a directory in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy

**Example 12-4 Creating the `/etc/netboot` Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server**

The following example shows how to create the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy for the client 010003BA152A42 on subnet 192.168.198.0. In this example, the user `nobody` and the group `admin` own the web server process.

The commands in this example perform the following tasks.

- Create the `/etc/netboot` directory.
- Change the permissions of the `/etc/netboot` directory to 700.

- Change the ownership of the `/etc/netboot` directory to the owner of the web server process.
- Assume the same user role as the web server user.
- Create a subdirectory of `/etc/netboot` that is named after the subnet (192.168.198.0).
- Create a subdirectory of the subnet directory that is named after the client ID.
- Change the permissions of the `/etc/netboot` subdirectories to 700.

```
# cd /
# mkdir /etc/netboot/
# chmod 700 /etc/netboot
# chown nobody:admin /etc/netboot
# exit
server# su nobody
Password:
nobody# mkdir -p /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42
nobody# chmod 700 /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0
nobody# chmod 700 /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42
```

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy, you must copy the WAN Boot CGI program to the WAN boot server. For instructions, see [“Copying the WAN Boot CGI Program to the WAN Boot Server”](#) on page 167.

**See Also** For detailed planning information about how to design the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy, see [“Storing Configuration and Security Information in the `/etc/netboot` Hierarchy”](#) on page 146.

## Copying the WAN Boot CGI Program to the WAN Boot Server

The `wanboot - cgi` program creates the data streams that transmit the following files from the WAN boot server to the client.

- `wanboot` program
- WAN boot file system
- WAN boot miniroot

The `wanboot - cgi` program is installed on the system when you install the current Oracle Solaris release software. To enable the WAN boot server to use this program, copy this program to the `cgi-bin` directory of the WAN boot server.

## ▼ To Copy the wanboot - cgi Program to the WAN Boot Server

- 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role on the WAN boot server.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

- 2 Copy the wanboot - cgi program to the WAN boot server.

```
# cp /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/wanboot-cgi /WAN-server-root/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
/WAN-server-root Specifies the root directory of the web server software on the WAN boot
server
```

- 3 On the WAN boot server, change the permissions of the CGI program to 755.

```
# chmod 755 /WAN-server-root/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
```

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you copy the WAN boot CGI program to the WAN boot server, you can optionally set up a logging server. For instructions, see “[\(Optional\) To Configure the WAN Boot Logging Server](#)” on page 168.

If you do not want to set up a separate logging server, see “[\(Optional\) Protecting Data by Using HTTPS](#)” on page 169 for instructions about how to set up the security features of a WAN boot installation.

**See Also** For overview information about the wanboot - cgi program, see “[What Is WAN Boot?](#)” on page 133.

## ▼ (Optional) To Configure the WAN Boot Logging Server

By default, all WAN boot logging messages are displayed on the client system. This default behavior enables you to quickly debug any installation issues.

If you want to record boot and installation logging messages on a system other than the client, you must set up a logging server. If you want to use a logging server with HTTPS during the installation, you must configure the WAN boot server as the logging server.

To configure the logging server, follow these steps.

- 1 Copy the bootlog - cgi script to the logging server's CGI script directory.

```
# cp /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/bootlog-cgi \ log-server-root/cgi-bin
```



`log-server-root/cgi-bin` Specifies the `cgi-bin` directory in the logging server's web server directory

**2 Change the permissions of the `bootlog-cgi` script to 755.**

```
# chmod 755 log-server-root/cgi-bin/bootlog-cgi
```

**3 Set the value of the `boot_logger` parameter in the `wanboot.conf` file.**

In the `wanboot.conf` file, specify the URL of the `bootlog-cgi` script on the logging server.

For more information about setting parameters in the `wanboot.conf` file, see [“To Create the `wanboot.conf` File” on page 185](#).

During the installation, boot and installation log messages are recorded in the `/tmp` directory of the logging server. The log file is named `bootlog.hostname`, where `hostname` is the host name of the client.

### Example 12–5 Configuring a Logging Server for WAN Boot Installation Over HTTPS

The following example configures the WAN boot server as a logging server.

```
# cp /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/bootlog-cgi /opt/apache/cgi-bin/
# chmod 755 /opt/apache/cgi-bin/bootlog-cgi
```

#### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you set up the logging server, you can optionally set up the WAN boot installation to use digital certificates and security keys. See [“\(Optional\) Protecting Data by Using HTTPS” on page 169](#) for instructions about how to set up the security features of a WAN boot installation.

## (Optional) Protecting Data by Using HTTPS

To protect your data during the transfer from the WAN boot server to the client, you can use HTTP over Secure Sockets Layer (HTTPS). To use the more secure installation configuration that is described in [“Secure WAN Boot Installation Configuration” on page 139](#), you must enable your web server to use HTTPS.

If you do not want to perform a secure WAN boot, skip the procedures in this section. To continue preparing for your less secure installation, see [“Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files” on page 175](#).

To enable the web server software on the WAN boot server to use HTTPS, you must perform the following tasks.

- Activate Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) support in your web server software.

The processes for enabling SSL support and client authentication vary by web server. This document does not describe how to enable these security features on your web server. For information about these features, see the following documentation.

- For information about activating SSL on the SunONE and iPlanet web servers, see the SunONE and iPlanet documentation collections on <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/documentation/index.html>.
- For information about activating SSL on the Apache web server, see the Apache Documentation Project at <http://httpd.apache.org/docs-project/>.
- If you are using web server software that is not listed in the previous list, see your web server software documentation.
- Install digital certificates on the WAN boot server.  
For information about using digital certificates with WAN boot, see “(Optional) To Use Digital Certificates for Server and Client Authentication” on page 170.
- Provide a trusted certificate to the client.  
For instructions about how to create a trusted certificate, see “(Optional) To Use Digital Certificates for Server and Client Authentication” on page 170.
- Create a hashing key and an encryption key.  
For instructions about how to create keys, see “(Optional) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key” on page 173.
- (Optional) Configure the web server software to support client authentication.  
For information about how to configure your web server to support client authentication, see your web server documentation.

This section describes how to use digital certificates and keys in your WAN boot installation.

## ▼ (Optional) To Use Digital Certificates for Server and Client Authentication

The WAN boot installation method can use PKCS#12 files to perform an installation over HTTPS with server or both client and server authentication. For requirements and guidelines about using PKCS#12 files, see “Digital Certificate Requirements” on page 149.

To use a PKCS#12 file in a WAN boot installation, you perform the following tasks.

- Split the PKCS#12 file into separate SSL private key and trusted certificate files.
- Insert the trusted certificate in the client's `truststore` file in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy. The trusted certificate instructs the client to trust the server.

- (Optional) Insert the contents of the SSL private key file in the client's keys store file in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy.

The `wanbootutil` command provides options to perform the tasks in the previous list.

If you do not want to perform a secure WAN boot, skip this procedure. To continue preparing for your less secure installation, see [“Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files” on page 175](#).

Follow these steps to create a trusted certificate and a client private key.

**Before You Begin** Before you split a PKCS#12 file, create the appropriate subdirectories of the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy on the WAN boot server.

- For overview information that describes the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy, see [“Storing Configuration and Security Information in the `/etc/netboot` Hierarchy” on page 146](#).
- For instructions about how to create the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy, see [“Creating the `/etc/netboot` Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165](#).

- 1 **Assume the same user role as the web server user on the WAN boot server.**
- 2 **Extract the trusted certificate from the PKCS#12 file. Insert the certificate in the client's truststore file in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy.**

```
# wanbootutil p12split -i p12cert \
-t /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/truststore
```

`p12split`

Option to `wanbootutil` command that splits a PKCS#12 file into separate private key and certificate files.

`-i p12cert`

Specifies the name of the PKCS#12 file to split.

`-t /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/truststore`

Inserts the certificate in the client's `truststore` file. `net-ip` is the IP address of the client's subnet. `client-ID` can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.

- 3 **(Optional) Decide if you want to require client authentication.**

- If no, go to [“\(Optional\) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key” on page 173](#).
- If yes, continue with the following steps.
  - a. **Insert the client certificate in the client's certstore.**

```
# wanbootutil p12split -i p12cert -c \
/etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/certstore -k keyfile
```

`p12split`

Option to `wanbootutil` command that splits a PKCS#12 file into separate private key and certificate files.

`-i p12cert`

Specifies the name of the PKCS#12 file to split.

`-c /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/certstore`

Inserts the client's certificate in the client's certstore. *net-ip* is the IP address of the client's subnet. *client-ID* can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.

`-k keyfile`

Specifies the name of the client's SSL private key file to create from the split PKCS#12 file.

**b. Insert the private key in the client's keystore.**

```
# wanbootutil keymgmt -i -k keyfile \  
-s /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/keystore -o type=rsa
```

```
keymgmt -i
```

Inserts an SSL private key in the client's keystore

`-k keyfile`

Specifies the name of the client's private key file that was created in the previous step

`-s /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/keystore`

Specifies the path to the client's keystore

`-o type=rsa`

Specifies the key type as RSA

**Example 12-6** Creating a Trusted Certificate for Server Authentication

In the following example, you use a PKCS#12 file to install client 010003BA152A42 on subnet 192.168.198.0. This command sample extracts a certificate from a PKCS#12 file that is named `client.p12`. The command then places the contents of the trusted certificate in the client's `truststore` file.

Before you execute these commands, you must first assume the same user role as the web server user. In this example, the web server user role is `nobody`.

```
server# su nobody  
Password:  
nobody# wanbootutil p12split -i client.p12 \  
-t /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42/truststore  
nobody# chmod 600 /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42/truststore
```

**More Information** Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create a digital certificate, create a hashing key and an encryption key. For instructions, see “(Optional) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key” on page 173.

**See Also** For more information about how to create trusted certificates, see the man page `wanbootutil(1M)`.

## ▼ (Optional) To Create a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key

If you want to use HTTPS to transmit your data, you must create a HMAC SHA1 hashing key and an encryption key. If you plan to install over a semi private network, you might not want to encrypt the installation data. You can use a HMAC SHA1 hashing key to check the integrity of the wanboot program.

By using the `wanbootutil keygen` command, you can generate these keys and store them in the appropriate `/etc/netboot` directory.

If you do not want to perform a secure WAN boot, skip this procedure. To continue preparing for your less secure installation, see “Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files” on page 175.

To create a hashing key and an encryption key, follow these steps.

**1 Assume the same user role as the web server user on the WAN boot server.**

**2 Create the master HMAC SHA1 key.**

```
# wanbootutil keygen -m
keygen -m    Creates the master HMAC SHA1 key for the WAN boot server
```

**3 Create the HMAC SHA1 hashing key for the client from the master key.**

```
# wanbootutil keygen -c -o [net=net-ip, {cid=client-ID,}] type=sha1
-c          Creates the client's hashing key from the master key.
-o          Indicates that additional options are included for the
            wanbootutil keygen command.
```

(Optional) `net=net-ip` Specifies the IP address for the client's subnet. If you do not use the `net` option, the key is stored in the `/etc/netboot/keystore` file, and can be used by all WAN boot clients.

- (Optional) `cid=client-ID` Specifies the client ID. The client ID can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID. The `cid` option must be preceded by a valid `net=` value. If you do not specify the `cid` option with the `net` option, the key is stored in the `/etc/netboot/net-ip/keystore` file. This key can be used by all WAN boot clients on the `net-ip` subnet.
- `type=sha1` Instructs the `wanbootutil keygen` utility to create a HMAC SHA1 hashing key for the client.

#### 4 Decide if you need to create an encryption key for the client.

You need to create an encryption key to perform a WAN boot installation over HTTPS. Before the client establishes an HTTPS connection with the WAN boot server, the WAN boot server transmits encrypted data and information to the client. The encryption key enables the client to decrypt this information and use this information during the installation.

- If you are performing a more secure WAN installation over HTTPS with server authentication, continue.
- If you only want to check the integrity of the `wanboot` program, you do not need to create an encryption key. Go to [Step 6](#).

#### 5 Create an encryption key for the client.

```
# wanbootutil keygen -c -o [net=net-ip, {cid=client-ID,}] type=key-type
```

`-c` Creates the client's encryption key.

`-o` Indicates that additional options are included for the `wanbootutil keygen` command.

(Optional) `net=net-ip` Specifies the network IP address for the client. If you do not use the `net` option, the key is stored in the `/etc/netboot/keystore` file, and can be used by all WAN boot clients.

(Optional) `cid=client-ID` Specifies the client ID. The client ID can be a user-defined ID, or the DHCP client ID. The `cid` option must be preceded by a valid `net=` value. If you do not specify the `cid` option with the `net` option, the key is stored in the `/etc/netboot/net-ip/keystore` file. This key can be used by all WAN boot clients on the `net-ip` subnet.

`type=key-type` Instructs the `wanbootutil keygen` utility to create an encryption key for the client. `key-type` can have a value of `3des` or `aes`.

#### 6 Install the keys on the client system.

For instructions about how to install keys on the client, see [“Installing Keys on the Client” on page 194](#).

**Example 12-7** Creating Required Keys for WAN Boot Installation Over HTTPS

The following example creates a master HMAC SHA1 key for the WAN boot server. This example also creates a HMAC SHA1 hashing key and 3DES encryption key for client 010003BA152A42 on subnet 192.168.198.0.

Before you execute these commands, you must first assume the same user role as the web server user. In this example, the web server user role is nobody.

```
server# su nobody
Password:
nobody# wanbootutil keygen -m
nobody# wanbootutil keygen -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=sha1
nobody# wanbootutil keygen -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=3des
```

**More Information** Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create a hashing and an encryption key, you must create the installation files. For instructions, see [“Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files” on page 175](#).

**See Also** For overview information on hashing keys and encryption keys, see [“Protecting Data During a WAN Boot Installation” on page 137](#).

For more information about how to create hashing and encryption keys, see the man page [wanbootutil\(1M\)](#).

## Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files

WAN boot performs a custom JumpStart installation to install a Solaris Flash archive on the client. The custom JumpStart installation method is a command-line interface that enables you to automatically install several systems, based on profiles that you create. The profiles define specific software installation requirements. You can also incorporate shell scripts to include preinstallation and postinstallation tasks. You choose which profile and scripts to use for installation or upgrade. The custom JumpStart installation method installs or upgrades the system, based on the profile and scripts that you select. Also, you can use a `sysidcfg` file to specify configuration information so that the custom JumpStart installation is completely free of manual intervention.

To prepare the custom JumpStart files for a WAN boot installation, complete the following tasks.

- [“To Create the Flash Archive” on page 176](#)
- [“To Create the sysidcfg File” on page 178](#)
- [“To Create the rules File” on page 180](#)

- “To Create the Profile” on page 179
- “(Optional) Creating Begin and Finish Scripts” on page 183

For detailed information on the custom JumpStart installation method, see [Chapter 2, “Custom JumpStart \(Overview\)”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

## ▼ To Create the Flash Archive

The Flash Archive installation feature enables you to use a single reference installation of the Oracle Solaris OS on a system, which is called the master system. You can then create a Flash Archive, which is a replica image of the master system. You can install the Flash Archive on other systems in the network, creating clone systems.

This section describes how to create a Flash Archive.

### Before You Begin

- Before you create a Flash Archive, you must first install the master system.
  - For information about installing a master system, see “Installing the master system” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Flash Archives (Creation and Installation)*.
  - For detailed information about Flash Archives, see [Chapter 1, “Flash Archive \(Overview\)”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Flash Archives (Creation and Installation)*.

- File Size Issues:

Check your web server software documentation to verify that the software can transmit files that are the size of a Flash Archive.

- Check your web server software documentation to verify that the software can transmit files that are the size of a Flash Archive.
- The `flarcreate` command no longer has size limitations on individual files. You can create a Flash Archive that contains individual files over 4 GB.

For more information, see “Creating an Archive That Contains Large Files” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Flash Archives (Creation and Installation)*.

### 1 Boot the master system.

Run the master system in as inactive a state as possible. When possible, run the system in single-user mode. If that is not possible, shut down any applications that you want to archive and any applications that require extensive operating system resources.

### 2 To create the archive, use the `flarcreate` command.

```
# flarcreate -n name [optional-parameters] document-root/flash/filename
```



<i>name</i>	The name that you give the archive. The <i>name</i> you specify is the value of the <code>content_name</code> keyword.
<i>optional-parameters</i>	You can use several options to the <code>flarcreate</code> command to customize your Flash Archive. For detailed descriptions of these options, see <a href="#">Chapter 6, “Flash Archive (Reference)”</a> in <i>Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Flash Archives (Creation and Installation)</i> .
<i>document-root/flash</i>	The path to the Solaris Flash subdirectory of the install server's document root directory.
<i>filename</i>	The name of the archive file.

To conserve disk space, you might want to use the `-c` option to the `flarcreate` command to compress the archive. However, a compressed archive can affect the performance of your WAN boot installation. For more information about creating a compressed archive, see the man page `flarcreate(1M)`.

- If the archive creation is successful, the `flarcreate` command returns an exit code of 0.
- If the archive creation fails, the `flarcreate` command returns a nonzero exit code.

### Example 12–8 Creating a Flash Archive for a WAN Boot Installation

In this example, you create your Flash Archive by cloning the WAN boot server system with the host name `wanserver`. The archive is named `sol_10_sparc`, and is copied exactly from the master system. The archive is an exact duplicate of the master system. The archive is stored in `sol_10_sparc.flar`. You save the archive in the `flash/archives` subdirectory of the document root directory on the WAN boot server.

```
wanserver# flarcreate -n sol_10_sparc \
/opt/apache/htdocs/flash/archives/sol_10_sparc.flar
```

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create the Flash Archive, preconfigure the client information in the `sysidcfg` file. For instructions, see [“To Create the sysidcfg File”](#) on page 178.

**See Also** For detailed instructions about how to create a Flash Archive, see [Chapter 3, “Creating Flash Archive \(tasks\)”](#) in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Flash Archives (Creation and Installation)*.

For more information about the `flarcreate` command, see the man page `flarcreate(1M)`.

## ▼ To Create the `sysidcfg` File

You can specify a set of keywords in the `sysidcfg` file to preconfigure a system.

To create the `sysidcfg` file, follow these steps.

**Before You Begin** Create the Flash Archive. See [“To Create the Flash Archive” on page 176](#) for detailed instructions.

**1 Create a file called `sysidcfg` in a text editor on the install server.**

**2 Type the `sysidcfg` keywords you want.**

For detailed information about `sysidcfg` keywords, see [“`sysidcfg` File Keywords” on page 22](#).

**3 Save the `sysidcfg` file in a location that is accessible to the WAN boot server.**

Save the file to one of the following locations.

- If the WAN boot server and install server are hosted on the same machine, save this file to the `flash` subdirectory of the document root directory on the WAN boot server.
- If the WAN boot server and install server are not on the same machine, save this file to the `flash` subdirectory of the document root directory of the install server.

### Example 12–9 `sysidcfg` File for WAN Boot Installation

The following is an example of a `sysidcfg` file for a SPARC based system. The host name, IP address, and netmask of this system have been preconfigured by editing the naming service.

```
network_interface=primary {hostname=wanclient
                           default_route=192.168.198.1
                           ip_address=192.168.198.210
                           netmask=255.255.255.0
                           protocol_ipv6=no}
timezone=US/Central
system_locale=C
terminal=xterm
timeserver=localhost
name_service=NIS {name_server=matter(192.168.255.255)
                  domain_name=mind.over.example.com
                  }
security_policy=none
```

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create the `sysidcfg` file, create a custom JumpStart profile for the client. For instructions, see [“To Create the Profile” on page 179](#).

**See Also** For more detailed information about `sysidcfg` keywords and values, see [“Preconfiguring With the `sysidcfg` File” on page 18](#).

## ▼ To Create the Profile

A profile is a text file that instructs the custom JumpStart program how to install the Oracle Solaris software on a system. A profile defines elements of the installation, for example, the software group to install.

For detailed information about how to create profiles, see [“Creating a Profile” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations\*](#).

To create the profile, follow these steps.

**Before You Begin** Create the `sysidcfg` file for the client. See [“To Create the `sysidcfg` File” on page 178](#) for detailed instructions.

### 1 Create a text file on the install server. Name the file descriptively.

Ensure that the name of the profile reflects how you intend to use the profile to install the Oracle Solaris software on a system. For example, you might name the profiles `basic_install`, `eng_profile`, or `user_profile`.

### 2 Add profile keywords and values to the profile.

For a list of profile keywords and values, see [“Profile Keywords and Values” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations\*](#).

Profile keywords and their values are case sensitive.

### 3 Save the profile in a location that is accessible to the WAN boot server.

Save the profile in one of the following locations.

- If the WAN boot server and install server are hosted on the same machine, save this file to the `flash` subdirectory of the document root directory on the WAN boot server.
- If the WAN boot server and install server are not on the same machine, save this file to the `flash` subdirectory of the document root directory of the install server.

### 4 Ensure that root owns the profile and that the permissions are set to 644.

### 5 (Optional) Test the profile.

[“Testing a Profile” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations\*](#) contains information about testing profiles.

**Example 12–10** Retrieving a Flash Archive From a Secure HTTP Server

In the following example, the profile indicates that the custom JumpStart program retrieves the Flash Archive from a secure HTTP server.

```
# profile keywords      profile values
# -----
install_type           flash_install
archive_location       https://192.168.198.2/sol_10_sparc.flar
partitioning           explicit
fileys                 c0t1d0s0 4000 /
fileys                 c0t1d0s1 512 swap
fileys                 c0t1d0s7 free /export/home
```

The following list describes some of the keywords and values from this example.

<code>install_type</code>	The profile installs a Flash Archive on the clone system. All files are overwritten as in an initial installation.
<code>archive_location</code>	The compressed Flash Archive is retrieved from a secure HTTP server.
<code>partitioning</code>	The file system slices are determined by the <code>fileys</code> keywords, value <code>explicit</code> . The size of root (/) is based on the size of the Flash Archive. The size of swap is set to the necessary size and is installed on <code>c0t1d0s1</code> . <code>/export/home</code> is based on the remaining disk space. <code>/export/home</code> is installed on <code>c0t1d0s7</code> .

**More Information** Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create a profile, you must create and validate the `rules` file. For instructions, see [“To Create the `rules` File” on page 180](#).

**See Also** For more information about how to create a profile, see [“Creating a Profile” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations\*](#).

For more detailed information about profile keywords and values, see [“Profile Keywords and Values” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations\*](#).

## ▼ To Create the `rules` File

The `rules` file is a text file that contains a rule for each group of systems on which you want to install the Oracle Solaris OS. Each rule distinguishes a group of systems that are based on one or more system attributes. Each rule also links each group to a profile. A profile is a text file that defines how the Oracle Solaris software is to be installed on each system in the group. For

example, the following rule specifies that the JumpStart program use the information in the `basic_prof` profile to install any system with the `sun4u` platform group.

```
karch sun4u - basic_prof -
```

The `rules` file is used to create the `rules.ok` file, which is required for custom JumpStart installations.

For detailed information about how to create a `rules` file, see “[Creating the rules File](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

To create the `rules` file, follow these steps.

**Before You Begin** Create the profile for the client. See “[To Create the Profile](#)” on page 179 for detailed instructions.

**1 On the install server, create a text file that is named `rules`.**

**2 Add a rule in the `rules` file for each group of systems you want to install.**

For detailed information about how to create a `rules` file, see “[Creating the rules File](#)” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

**3 Save the `rules` file on the install server.**

**4 Validate the `rules` file.**

```
$ ./check -p path -r file-name
```

`-p path` Validates the `rules` by using the `check` script from the current Oracle Solaris release software image instead of the `check` script from the system you are using. `path` is the image on a local disk or a mounted Oracle Solaris DVD or a Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD.

Use this option to run the most recent version of `check` if your system is running a previous version of the Oracle Solaris OS.

`-r file_name` Specifies a `rules` file other than the file that is named `rules`. By using this option, you can test the validity of a rule before you integrate the rule into the `rules` file.

As the `check` script runs, the script reports the checking of the validity of the `rules` file and each profile. If no errors are encountered, the script reports: The custom JumpStart configuration is ok. The `check` script creates the `rules.ok` file.

**5 Save the `rules.ok` file in a location that is accessible to the WAN boot server.**

Save the file to one of the following locations.

- If the WAN boot server and install server are hosted on the same machine, save this file to the `flash` subdirectory of the document root directory on the WAN boot server.
- If the WAN boot server and install server are not on the same machine, save this file to the `flash` subdirectory of the document root directory of the install server.

## 6 Ensure that root owns the `rules.ok` file and that the permissions are set to 644.

### Example 12–11 Creating and Validating the `rules` File

The custom JumpStart programs use the `rules` file to select the correct installation profile for the `wanclient-1` system. Create a text file that is named `rules`. Then, add keywords and values to this file.

The IP address of the client system is 192.168.198.210, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. Use the `network` rule keyword to specify the profile that the custom JumpStart programs should use to install the client.

```
network 192.168.198.0 - wanclient_prof -
```

This `rules` file instructs the custom JumpStart programs to use the `wanclient_prof` to install the current Oracle Solaris release software on the client.

Name this rule file `wanclient_rule`.

After you create the profile and the `rules` file, you run the check script to verify that the files are valid.

```
wanserver# ./check -r wanclient_rule
```

If the check script does not find any errors, the script creates the `rules.ok` file.

Save the `rules.ok` file in the `/opt/apache/htdocs/flash/` directory.

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create the `rules.ok` file, you can optionally set up begin and finish scripts for your installation. For instructions, see [“\(Optional\) Creating Begin and Finish Scripts” on page 183](#).

If you do not want to set up begin and finish scripts, see [“Creating the Configuration Files” on page 183](#) to continue the WAN boot installation.

**See Also** For more information about how to create a `rules` file, see [“Creating the rules File” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations\*](#).

For more detailed information about rules file keywords and values, see “Rule Keywords and Values” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

## (Optional) Creating Begin and Finish Scripts

Begin and finish scripts are user-defined Bourne shell scripts that you specify in the rules file. A begin script performs tasks before the Oracle Solaris software is installed on a system. A finish script performs tasks after the Oracle Solaris software is installed on a system, but before the system reboots. You can use these scripts only when using custom JumpStart to install Oracle Solaris.

You can use begin scripts to create derived profiles. Finish scripts enable you to perform various postinstallation tasks, such as adding files, packages, patches, or additional software.

You must store the begin and finish scripts in the same directory as the `sysidcfg`, `rules.ok`, and profile files on the install server.

- For more information about creating begin scripts, see “Creating Begin Scripts” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.
- For more information about creating finish scripts, see “Creating Finish Scripts” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Custom JumpStart and Advanced Installations*.

To continue preparing for your WAN boot installation, see “Creating the Configuration Files” on page 183.

## Creating the Configuration Files

WAN boot uses the following files to specify the location of the data and files that are required for a WAN boot installation.

- System configuration file (`system.conf`)
- `wanboot.conf` file

This section describes how to create and store these two files.

### ▼ To Create the System Configuration File

In the system configuration file, you can direct the WAN boot installation programs to the following files.

- `sysidcfg` file

- `rules.ok` file
- Custom JumpStart profile

WAN boot follows the pointers in the system configuration file to install and configure the client.

The system configuration file is a plain text file, and must be formatted in the following pattern.

*setting=value*

To use a system configuration file to direct the WAN installation programs to the `sysidcfg`, `rules.ok`, and profile files, follow these steps.

**Before You Begin** Before you create the system configuration file, you must create the installation files for you WAN boot installation. See [“Creating the Custom JumpStart Installation Files”](#) on page 175 for detailed instructions.

- 1 Assume the same user role as the web server user on the WAN boot server.**
- 2 Create a text file. Name the file descriptively, for example, `sys-conf.s10-sparc`.**
- 3 Add the following entries to the system configuration file.**

*SsysidCF=sysidcfg-file-URL*

This setting points to the `flash` directory on the install server that contains the `sysidcfg` file. Make sure that this URL matches the path to the `sysidcfg` file that you created in [“To Create the `sysidcfg` File”](#) on page 178.

For WAN installations that use HTTPS, set the value to a valid HTTPS URL.

*Sjumpscf=jumpstart-files-URL*

This setting points to the Oracle Solaris Flash directory on the install server that contains the `rules.ok` file, profile file, and begin and finish scripts. Make sure that this URL matches the path to the custom JumpStart files that you created in [“To Create the Profile”](#) on page 179 and [“To Create the `rules` File”](#) on page 180.

For WAN installations that use HTTPS, set the value to a valid HTTPS URL.

- 4 Save the file to a directory that is accessible to the WAN boot server.**

For administration purposes, you might want to save the file to the appropriate client directory in the `/etc/netboot` directory on the WAN boot server.

- 5 Change the permissions on the system configuration file to 600.**

```
# chmod 600 /path/system-conf-file
```



<i>path</i>	Specifies the path to the directory that contains the system configuration file.
<i>system-conf-file</i>	Specifies the name of the system configuration file.

### Example 12–12 System Configuration File for WAN Boot Installation Over HTTPS

In the following example, the WAN boot programs check for the `sysidcfg` and custom JumpStart files on the web server `https://www.example.com` on port 1234. The web server uses secure HTTP to encrypt data and files during the installation.

The `sysidcfg` and custom JumpStart files are located in the `flash` subdirectory of the document root directory `/opt/apache/htdocs`.

```
SsysidCF=https://www.example.com:1234/flash
SjumpsCF=https://www.example.com:1234/flash
```

### Example 12–13 System Configuration File for Insecure WAN Boot Installation

In the following example, the WAN boot programs check for the `sysidcfg` and custom JumpStart files on the web server `http://www.example.com`. The web server uses HTTP, so the data and files are not protected during the installation.

The `sysidcfg` and custom JumpStart files are located in the `flash` subdirectory of the document root directory `/opt/apache/htdocs`.

```
SsysidCF=http://www.example.com/flash
SjumpsCF=http://www.example.com/flash
```

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create the system configuration file, create the `wanboot.conf` file. For instructions, see [“To Create the wanboot.conf File” on page 185](#).

## ▼ To Create the wanboot.conf File

The `wanboot.conf` file is a plain text configuration file that the WAN boot programs use to perform a WAN installation. The `wanboot-cgi` program, the boot file system, and the WAN boot miniroot all use the information included in the `wanboot.conf` file to install the client machine.

Save the `wanboot.conf` file in the appropriate client subdirectory in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy on the WAN boot server. For information about how to define the scope of your

WAN boot installation with the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy, see [“Creating the `/etc/netboot` Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server”](#) on page 165.

If the WAN boot server is running the current Oracle Solaris release, a sample `wanboot.conf` file is located in `/etc/netboot/wanboot.conf.sample`. You can use this sample as a template for your WAN boot installation.

You must include the following information in the `wanboot.conf` file.

Type of Information	Description
WAN boot server information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Path to <code>wanboot</code> program on the WAN boot server</li> <li>■ URL of <code>wanboot-cgi</code> program on WAN boot server</li> </ul>
Install server information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Path to WAN boot miniroot on the install server</li> <li>■ Path to system configuration file on the WAN boot server that specifies location of <code>sysidcfg</code> and custom JumpStart files</li> </ul>
Security information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Signature type for the WAN boot file system or WAN boot miniroot</li> <li>■ Encryption type for the WAN boot file system</li> <li>■ Whether the server should be authenticated during the WAN boot installation</li> <li>■ Whether the client should be authenticated during the WAN boot installation</li> </ul>
Optional information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Additional hosts that might need to be resolved for the client during a WAN boot installation</li> <li>■ URL to the <code>bootlog-cgi</code> script on the logging server</li> </ul>

You specify this information by listing parameters with associated values in the following format.

*parameter=value*

For detailed information about `wanboot.conf` file parameters and syntax, see [“`wanboot.conf` File Parameters and Syntax”](#) on page 231.

To create the `wanboot.conf` file, follow these steps.

- 1 Assume the same user role as the web server user on the WAN boot server.**

## 2 Create the `wanboot.conf` text file.

You can create a new text file that is named `wanboot.conf`, or use the sample file that is located in `/etc/netboot/wanboot.conf.sample`. If you use the sample file, rename the file `wanboot.conf` after you add parameters.

## 3 Type the `wanboot.conf` parameters and values for your installation.

For detailed descriptions of `wanboot.conf` parameters and values, see [“`wanboot.conf` File Parameters and Syntax” on page 231](#).

## 4 Save the `wanboot.conf` file to the appropriate subdirectory of the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy.

For information about how to create the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy, see [“Creating the `/etc/netboot` Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165](#).

## 5 Validate the `wanboot.conf` file.

```
# bootconfchk /etc/netboot/path-to-wanboot.conf/wanboot.conf
```

*path-to-wanboot.conf* Specifies the path to the client's `wanboot.conf` file on the WAN boot server

- If the `wanboot.conf` file is structurally valid, the `bootconfchk` command returns an exit code of 0.
- If the `wanboot.conf` file is invalid, the `bootconfchk` command returns a nonzero exit code.

## 6 Change the permissions on the `wanboot.conf` file to 600.

```
# chmod 600 /etc/netboot/path-to-wanboot.conf/wanboot.conf
```

### Example 12–14 `wanboot.conf` File for WAN Boot Installation Over HTTPS

The following `wanboot.conf` file example includes configuration information for a WAN installation that uses secure HTTP. The `wanboot.conf` file also indicates that a 3DES encryption key is used in this installation.

```
boot_file=/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc
root_server=https://www.example.com:1234/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
root_file=/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc
signature_type=sha1
encryption_type=3des
server_authentication=yes
client_authentication=no
resolve_hosts=
boot_logger=https://www.example.com:1234/cgi-bin/bootlog-cgi
system_conf=sys-conf.s10-sparc
```

This `wanboot.conf` file specifies the following configuration.

`boot_file=/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc`

The second level boot program is named `wanboot.s10_sparc`. This program is located in the `/wanboot` directory in the WAN boot server's document root directory.

`root_server=https://www.example.com:1234/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi`

The location of the `wanboot-cgi` program on the WAN boot server is `https://www.example.com:1234/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi`. The `https` portion of the URL indicates that this WAN boot installation uses secure HTTP.

`root_file=/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc`

The WAN boot miniroot is named `miniroot.s10_sparc`. This miniroot is located in the `/miniroot` directory in the WAN boot server's document root directory.

`signature_type=sha1`

The `wanboot.s10_sparc` program and the WAN boot file system are signed with a HMAC SHA1 hashing key.

`encryption_type=3des`

The `wanboot.s10_sparc` program and the boot file system are encrypted with a 3DES key.

`server_authentication=yes`

The server is authenticated during the installation.

`client_authentication=no`

The client is not authenticated during the installation.

`resolve_hosts=`

No additional host names are needed to perform the WAN installation. All required files and information are located in the document root directory on the WAN boot server.

`boot_logger=https://www.example.com:1234/cgi-bin/bootlog-cgi`

(Optional) Booting and installation log messages are recorded on the WAN boot server by using secure HTTP.

For instructions on how to set up a logging server for your WAN boot installation, see [“\(Optional\) To Configure the WAN Boot Logging Server”](#) on page 168.

`system_conf=sys-conf.s10-sparc`

The system configuration file that contains the locations of the `sysidcfg` and JumpStart files is located in a subdirectory of the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy. The system configuration file is named `sys-conf.s10-sparc`.

### **Example 12–15** `wanboot.conf` File for Insecure WAN Boot Installation

The following `wanboot.conf` file example includes configuration information for a less secure WAN boot installation that uses HTTP. This `wanboot.conf` file also indicates that the installation does not use an encryption key or a hashing key.

```

boot_file=/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc
root_server=http://www.example.com/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
root_file=/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc
signature_type=
encryption_type=
server_authentication=no
client_authentication=no
resolve_hosts=
boot_logger=http://www.example.com/cgi-bin/bootlog-cgi
system_conf=sys-conf.s10-sparc

```

This `wanboot.conf` file specifies the following configuration.

```
boot_file=/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc
```

The second level boot program is named `wanboot.s10_sparc`. This program is located in the `/wanboot` directory in the WAN boot server's document root directory.

```
root_server=http://www.example.com/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
```

The location of the `wanboot-cgi` program on the WAN boot server is `http://www.example.com/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi`. This installation does not use secure HTTP.

```
root_file=/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc
```

The WAN boot miniroot is named `miniroot.s10_sparc`. This miniroot is located in the `/miniroot` subdirectory in the WAN boot server's document root directory.

```
signature_type=
```

The `wanboot.s10_sparc` program and the WAN boot file system are not signed with a hashing key.

```
encryption_type=
```

The `wanboot.s10_sparc` program and the boot file system are not encrypted.

```
server_authentication=no
```

The server is not authenticated with keys or certificates during the installation.

```
client_authentication=no
```

The client is not authenticated with keys or certificates during the installation.

```
resolve_hosts=
```

No additional host names are needed to perform the installation. All required files and information are located in the document root directory on the WAN boot server.

```
boot_logger=http://www.example.com/cgi-bin/bootlog-cgi
```

(Optional) Booting and installation log messages are recorded on the WAN boot server.

For instructions on how to set up a logging server for your WAN boot installation, see [“\(Optional\) To Configure the WAN Boot Logging Server” on page 168](#).

```
system_conf=sys-conf.s10-sparc
```

The system configuration file that contains the locations of the `sysidcfg` and JumpStart files is named `sys-conf.s10-sparc`. This file is located in the appropriate client subdirectory of the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy.

## More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you create the `wanboot . conf` file, you can optionally configure a DHCP server to support WAN boot. For instructions, see [“\(Optional\) Providing Configuration Information With a DHCP Server”](#) on page 190.

If you do not want to use a DHCP server in your WAN boot installation, see [“To Check the net Device Alias in the Client OBP”](#) on page 192 to continue the WAN boot installation.

**See Also** For detailed descriptions of `wanboot . conf` parameters and values, see [“wanboot . conf File Parameters and Syntax”](#) on page 231 and the man page `wanboot . conf(4)`.

# (Optional) Providing Configuration Information With a DHCP Server

If you use a DHCP server on your network, you can configure the DHCP server to supply the following information.

- Proxy server's IP address
- Location of the `wanboot - cgi` program

You can use the following DHCP vendor options in your WAN boot installation.

`SHTTPproxy` Specifies the IP address of the network's proxy server

`SbootURI` Specifies the URL of the `wanboot - cgi` program on the WAN boot server

For information about setting these vendor options on a Oracle Solaris DHCP server, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) on page 47.

For detailed information about setting up a Oracle Solaris DHCP server, see [Chapter 14, “Configuring the DHCP Service \(Tasks\),”](#) in *System Administration Guide: IP Services*.

To continue with your WAN boot installation, see [Chapter 13, “SPARC: Installing With WAN Boot \(Tasks\).”](#)

## SPARC: Installing With WAN Boot (Tasks)

---

This chapter describes how to perform a WAN boot installation on a SPARC based client. For information about how to prepare for a WAN boot installation, see [Chapter 12, “Installing With WAN Boot \(Tasks\)”](#).

This chapter describes the following tasks.

- “Preparing the Client for a WAN Boot Installation” on page 192
- “Installing the Client” on page 199

### Task Map: Installing a Client With WAN Boot

The following table lists the tasks you need to perform to install a client over a WAN.

TABLE 13-1 Task Map: Performing a WAN Boot Installation

Task	Description	For Instructions
Prepare the network for a WAN boot installation.	Set up the servers and files that are required to perform a WAN boot installation.	<a href="#">Chapter 12, “Installing With WAN Boot (Tasks)”</a>
Verify that the net device alias is set correctly in the client OBP.	Use the <code>devalias</code> command to verify that the net device alias is set to the primary network interface.	<a href="#">“To Check the net Device Alias in the Client OBP” on page 192</a>

**TABLE 13–1** Task Map: Performing a WAN Boot Installation *(Continued)*

Task	Description	For Instructions
Provide keys to the client	Provide keys to the client by setting OBP variables or entering key values during the installation.  This task is required for secure installation configurations. For insecure installations that check data integrity, complete this task to provide the HMAC SHA1 hashing key to the client.	<a href="#">“Installing Keys on the Client” on page 194</a>
Install the client over a wide area network.	Choose the appropriate method to install your client.	<a href="#">“To Perform a Noninteractive WAN Boot Installation” on page 200</a> <a href="#">“To Perform an Interactive WAN Boot Installation” on page 202</a> <a href="#">“To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With a DHCP Server” on page 206</a> <a href="#">“To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With Local CD Media” on page 207</a>

## Preparing the Client for a WAN Boot Installation

Before you install the client system, prepare the client by performing the following tasks.

- [“To Check the net Device Alias in the Client OBP” on page 192](#)
- [“Installing Keys on the Client” on page 194](#)

### ▼ To Check the net Device Alias in the Client OBP

To boot the client from the WAN with the boot net, the net device alias must be set to the client's primary network device. On most systems, this alias is already set correctly. However, if the alias is not set to the network device you want to use, you must change the alias.

For more information about setting device aliases, see “The Device Tree” in *OpenBoot 3.x Command Reference Manual*.

Follow these steps to check the net device alias on the client.

- 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role on the client.**



---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

## 2 Bring the system to run level 0.

```
# init 0
```

The ok prompt is displayed.

## 3 At the ok prompt, check device aliases that are set in the OBP.

```
ok devalias
```

The devalias command outputs information that is similar to the following example.

```
screen                /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/SUNW,m64B@2
net                   /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@c,1
net2                  /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@5,1
disk                  /pci@1f,0/pci@1/scsi@8/disk@0,0
cdrom                 /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ide@d/cdrom@0,0:f
keyboard              /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ibus@1/su@14,3083f8
mouse                 /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ibus@1/su@14,3062f8
```

- If the net alias is set to the network device you want to use during the installation, you do not need to reset the alias. Go to “[Installing Keys on the Client](#)” on page 194 to continue your installation.
- If the net alias is not set to the network device you want to use, you must reset the alias. Continue.

## 4 Set the net device alias.

Choose one of the following commands to set the net device alias.

- To set the net device alias for this installation only, use the devalias command.

```
ok devalias net device-path
```

```
net device-path    Assigns the device device-path to the net alias
```

- To permanently set the net device alias, use the nvalias command.

```
ok nvalias net device-path
```

```
net device-path    Assigns the device device-path to the net alias
```

### Example 13–1 Checking and Resetting the net Device Alias

The following commands show how to check and reset the net device alias.

Check the device aliases.

```
ok devalias
screen                /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/SUNW,m64B@2
```

```
net                /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@c,1
net2              /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@5,1
disk              /pci@1f,0/pci@1/scsi@8/disk@0,0
cdrom             /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ide@d/cdrom@0,0:f
keyboard          /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ebus@1/su@14,3083f8
mouse             /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ebus@1/su@14,3062f8
```

If you want to use the `/pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@5,1` network device, type the following command.

```
ok devalias net /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@5,1
```

## More Information **Continuing the WAN Boot Installation**

After you check the net device alias, see the appropriate section to continue the installation.

- If you are using a hashing key and an encryption key in your installation, see [“Installing Keys on the Client” on page 194](#).
- If you are performing a less secure installation without keys, see [“Installing the Client” on page 199](#).

## Installing Keys on the Client

For a more secure WAN boot installation or an insecure installation with data integrity checking, you must install keys on the client. By using a hashing key and an encryption key, you can protect the data that is transmitted to the client. You can install these keys in the following ways.

- Set OBP variables – You can assign key values to OBP network boot argument variables before you boot the client. These keys can then be used for future WAN boot installations of the client.
- Enter the key values during the boot process – You can set key values at the `wanboot program boot>` prompt. If you use this method to install keys, the keys are only used for the current WAN boot installation.

You can also install keys in the OBP of a running client. If you want to install keys on a running client, the system must be running the Solaris 9 12/03 OS, or compatible version.

When you install keys on your client, ensure that the key values are not transmitted over an insecure connection. Follow your site's security policies to ensure the privacy of the key values.

- For instructions about how to assign key values to OBP network boot argument variables, see [“To Install Keys in the Client OBP” on page 195](#).
- For instructions about how to install keys during the boot process, see [“To Perform an Interactive WAN Boot Installation” on page 202](#).

- For instructions about how to install keys in the OBP of a running client, see [“To Install a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key on a Running Client”](#) on page 197.

## ▼ To Install Keys in the Client OBP

You can assign key values to OBP network boot argument variables before you boot the client. These keys can then be used for future WAN boot installations of the client.

To install keys in the client OBP, follow these steps.

If you want to assign key values to OBP network boot argument variables, follow these steps.

### 1 Assume the same user role as the web server user on the WAN boot server.

### 2 Display the key value for each client key.

```
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=net-ip,cid=client-ID,type=key-type
```

*net-ip*            The IP address of the client's subnet.

*client-ID*        The ID of the client you want to install. The client ID can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.

*key-type*        The key type you want to install on the client. Valid key types are 3des, aes, or sha1.

The hexadecimal value for the key is displayed.

### 3 Repeat the previous step for each type of client key you want to install.

### 4 Bring the client system to run level 0.

```
# init 0
```

The ok prompt is displayed.

### 5 At the client ok prompt, set the value for the hashing key.

```
ok set-security-key wanboot-hmac-sha1 key-value
```

set-security-key    Installs the key on the client

wanboot-hmac-sha1    Instructs OBP to install a HMAC SHA1 hashing key

*key-value*            Specifies the hexadecimal string that is displayed in [Step 2](#).

The HMAC SHA1 hashing key is installed in the client OBP.

### 6 At the client ok prompt, install the encryption key.

```
ok set-security-key wanboot-3des key-value
```

set-security-key    Installs the key on the client

`wanboot - 3des` Instructs OBP to install a 3DES encryption key. If you want to use an AES encryption key, set this value to `wanboot - aes`.

*key-value* Specifies the hexadecimal string that represents the encryption key.

The 3DES encryption key is installed in the client OBP.

After you install the keys, you are ready to install the client. See [“Installing the Client” on page 199](#) for instructions about how to install the client system.

## 7 (Optional) Verify that the keys are set in the client OBP.

```
ok list-security-keys
Security Keys:
    wanboot - hmac - sha1
    wanboot - 3des
```

## 8 (Optional) If you need to delete a key, type the following command.

```
ok set-security-key key-type
```

*key-type* Specifies the type of key you need to delete. Use the value `wanboot - hmac - sha1`, `wanboot - 3des`, or `wanboot - aes`.

### Example 13–2 Installing Keys in the Client OBP

The following example shows how to install a hashing key and an encryption key in the client OBP.

Display the key values on the WAN boot server.

```
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=sha1
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=3des
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

The previous example uses the following information.

```
net=192.168.198.0
```

Specifies the IP address of the client's subnet

```
cid=010003BA152A42
```

Specifies the client's ID

```
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
```

Specifies the value of the client's HMAC SHA1 hashing key

```
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

Specifies the value of the client's 3DES encryption key

If you use an AES encryption key in your installation, change `wanboot - 3des` to `wanboot - aes` to display the encryption key value.

Install the keys on the client system.

```
ok set-security-key wanboot-hmac-sha1 b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
ok set-security-key wanboot-3des 9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

The previous commands perform the following tasks.

- Installs the HMAC SHA1 hashing key with a value of `b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463` on the client
  - Installs the 3DES encryption key with a value of `9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04` on the client
- If you use an AES encryption key in your installation, change `wanboot - 3des` to `wanboot - aes`.

## More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you install keys on your client, you are ready to install the client over the WAN. For instructions, see [“Installing the Client” on page 199](#).

**See Also** For more information about how to display key values, see the man page `wanbootutil(1M)`.

### ▼ To Install a Hashing Key and an Encryption Key on a Running Client

You can set key values at the `wanboot` program `boot>` prompt on a running system. If you use this method to install keys, the keys are only used for the current WAN boot installation.

If you want to install a hashing key and an encryption key in the OBP of a running client, follow these steps.

**Before You Begin** This procedure makes the following assumptions.

- The client system is powered on.
- The client is accessible over a secure connection, such as a secure shell (ssh).

**1 Assume the same user role as the web server user on the WAN boot server.**

**2 Display the key value for the client keys.**

```
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=net-ip,cid=client-ID,type=key-type
```

*net-ip*            The IP address of the client's subnet.

*client-ID*        The ID of the client you want to install. The client ID can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.

*key-type*        The key type you want to install on the client. Valid key types are `3des`, `aes`, or `sha1`.

The hexadecimal value for the key is displayed.

- 3 Repeat the previous step for each type of client key you want to install.
- 4 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role on the client machine.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “Configuring RBAC (Task Map)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

- 5 Install the necessary keys on the running client machine.

```
# /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/ickey -o type=key-type
> key-value
```

*key-type* Specifies the key type you want to install on the client. Valid key types are 3des, aes, or sha1.

*key-value* Specifies the hexadecimal string that is displayed in [Step 2](#).

- 6 Repeat the previous step for each type of client key you want to install.

After you install the keys, you are ready to install the client. See “Installing the Client” on [page 199](#) for instructions about how to install the client system.

### Example 13–3 Installing Keys in the OBP of a Running Client System

The following example shows how to install keys in the OBP of a running client.

Display the key values on the WAN boot server.

```
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=sha1
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=3des
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

The previous example uses the following information.

```
net=192.168.198.0
```

Specifies the IP address of the client's subnet

```
cid=010003BA152A42
```

Specifies the client's ID

```
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
```

Specifies the value of the client's HMAC SHA1 hashing key

```
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

Specifies the value of the client's 3DES encryption key

If you use an AES encryption key in your installation, change `type=3des` to `type=aes` to display the encryption key value.

Install the keys in the OBP of the running client.

```
# /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/ickey -o type=sha1 b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
# /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/ickey -o type=3des 9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

The previous commands perform the following tasks.

- Installs a HMAC SHA1 hashing key with a value of `b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463` on the client
- Installs a 3DES encryption key with a value of `9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04` on the client

### More Information Continuing the WAN Boot Installation

After you install keys on your client, you are ready to install the client over the WAN. For instructions, see [“Installing the Client” on page 199](#).

**See Also** For more information about how to display key values, see the man page `wanbootutil(1M)`.

For additional information about how to install keys on a running system, see `ickey(1M)`.

## Installing the Client

When you finish preparing your network for a WAN boot installation, you can choose from the following ways to install the system.

TABLE 13-2 Methods to Install the Client

Method	Description	Instructions
Noninteractive installation	Use this installation method if you want to install keys on the client and set the client configuration information before you boot the client.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To install keys on the client before the installation, see <a href="#">“Installing Keys on the Client” on page 194</a>.</li> <li>■ To perform a noninteractive installation, see <a href="#">“To Perform a Noninteractive WAN Boot Installation” on page 200</a>.</li> </ul>
Interactive installation	Use this installation method if you want to set the client configuration information during the boot process.	<a href="#">“To Perform an Interactive WAN Boot Installation” on page 202</a>

TABLE 13-2 Methods to Install the Client (Continued)

Method	Description	Instructions
Installing with a DHCP server	Use this installation method if you configured the network DHCP server to provide client configuration information during the installation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To configure a DHCP server to support a WAN boot installation, see <a href="#">“(Optional) Providing Configuration Information With a DHCP Server”</a> on page 190.</li> <li>■ To use a DHCP server during your installation, see <a href="#">“To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With a DHCP Server”</a> on page 206.</li> </ul>
Installing with local CD media	If your client OBP does not support WAN boot, boot the client from a local copy of the Oracle Solaris Software CD.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To determine if the client OBP supports WAN boot, see <a href="#">“To Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support”</a> on page 161.</li> <li>■ To install the client with a local copy of the Oracle Solaris Software CD, see <a href="#">“To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With Local CD Media”</a> on page 207.</li> </ul>

## ▼ To Perform a Noninteractive WAN Boot Installation

Use this installation method if you prefer to install keys and set client configuration information before you install the client. You can then boot the client from the WAN and perform an unattended installation.

This procedure assumes that you have either installed keys in the client's OBP, or that you are performing an insecure installation. For information about installing keys on the client before your installation, see [“Installing Keys on the Client”](#) on page 194.

### 1 If the client system is currently running, bring the system to run level 0.

```
# init 0
```

The ok prompt is displayed.

### 2 At the ok prompt on the client system, set the network boot argument variables in OBP.

```
ok setenv network-boot-arguments host-ip=client-IP,  
router-ip=router-ip, subnet-mask=mask-value,
```



---

```
hostname=client-name,http-proxy=proxy-ip:port,
file=wanbootCGI-URL
```

---

**Note** – The line breaks in this command sample are included for formatting purposes only. Do not enter a carriage return until you finish typing the command.

---

setenv network-boot-arguments	Instructs the OBP to set the following boot arguments
host-ip= <i>client-IP</i>	Specifies the IP address of the client
router-ip= <i>router-ip</i>	Specifies the IP address of the network router
subnet-mask= <i>mask-value</i>	Specifies the subnet mask value
hostname= <i>client-name</i>	Specifies the host name of the client
(Optional) http-proxy= <i>proxy-ip:port</i>	Specifies the IP address and port of the network's proxy server
file= <i>wanbootCGI-URL</i>	Specifies the URL of the wanboot - cgi program on the web server

### 3 Boot the client.

```
ok boot net - install
```

```
net - install
```

Instructs the client to use the network boot argument variables to boot from the WAN

The client installs over the WAN. If the WAN boot programs do not find all the necessary installation information, the wanboot program prompts to provide the missing information. Type the additional information at the prompt.

#### Example 13–4 Noninteractive WAN Boot Installation

In the following example, the network boot argument variables for the client system `myclient` are set before the machine is booted. This example assumes that a hashing key and encryption key are already installed on the client. For information about installing keys before you boot from the WAN, see “Installing Keys on the Client” on page 194.

```
ok setenv network-boot-arguments host-ip=192.168.198.136,
router-ip=192.168.198.129,subnet-mask=255.255.255.192
hostname=myclient,file=http://192.168.198.135/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
ok boot net - install
Resetting ...
```

```
Sun Blade 100 (UltraSPARC-IIe), No Keyboard
Copyright 1998-2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
OpenBoot 4.x.build_28, 512 MB memory installed, Serial #50335475.
Ethernet address 0:3:ba:e:f3:75, Host ID: 83000ef3.
```

```
Rebooting with command: boot net - install
Boot device: /pci@1f,0/network@0,1 File and args: - install
```

The following variables are set.

- The client IP address is set to 192.168.198.136.
- The client's router IP address is set to 192.168.198.129.
- The client's subnet mask is set to 255.255.255.192.
- The client's host name is set to seahag.
- The wanboot - cgi program is located at `http://192.168.198.135/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi`.

**See Also** For more information about how to set network boot arguments, see [set\(1\)](#).

For more information about how to boot a system, see [boot\(1M\)](#).

## ▼ To Perform an Interactive WAN Boot Installation

Use this installation method if you want to install keys and set client configuration information at the command line during the installation.

This procedure assumes that you are using HTTPS in your WAN installation. If you are performing an insecure installation that does not use keys, do not display or install the client keys.

- 1 **Assume the same user role as the web server user on the WAN boot server.**
- 2 **Display the key value for each client key.**

```
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=net-ip,cid=client-ID,type=key-type
```

*net-ip*           The IP address of the subnet for the client you want to install.

*client-ID*       The ID of the client you want to install. The client ID can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.

*key-type*       The key type you want to install on the client. Valid key types are 3des, aes, or sha1.

The hexadecimal value for the key is displayed.

- 3 Repeat the previous step for each type of client key you are installing.
- 4 If the client system is currently running, bring the client to run level 0.
- 5 At the ok prompt on the client system, set the network boot argument variables in OBP.

```
ok setenv network-boot-arguments host-ip=client-IP,router-ip=router-ip,
subnet-mask=mask-value,hostname=client-name,
http-proxy=proxy-ip:port,bootserver=wanbootCGI-URL
```

---

**Note** – The line breaks in this command sample are included for formatting purposes only. Do not enter a carriage return until you finish typing the command.

---

setenv network-boot-arguments	Instructs the OBP to set the following boot arguments
host-ip=client-IP	Specifies the IP address of the client
router-ip=router-ip	Specifies the IP address of the network router
subnet-mask=mask-value	Specifies the subnet mask value
hostname=client-name	Specifies the host name of the client
(Optional) http-proxy=proxy-ip:port	Specifies the IP address and port of the network's proxy server
bootserver=wanbootCGI-URL	Specifies the URL of the wanboot - cgi program on the web server

---

**Note** – The URL value for the bootserver variable must not be an HTTPS URL. The URL must start with http://.

---

- 6 At the client ok prompt, boot the system.

```
ok boot net -o prompt - install
```

```
net -o prompt - install
```

Instructs the client to boot and install from the network. The wanboot program prompts the user to enter client configuration information at the boot> prompt.

The boot> prompt is displayed.

- 7 Install the encryption key.

```
boot> 3des=key-value
```

3des=key-value Specifies the hexadecimal string of the 3DES key that is displayed in [Step 2](#).

If you use an AES encryption key, use the following format for this command.

```
boot> aes=key-value
```

**8 Install the hashing key.**

```
boot> sha1=key-value
```

sha1=key-value Specifies the hashing key value that is displayed in [Step 2](#).

**9 Type the following command to continue the boot process.**

```
boot> go
```

The client installs over the WAN.

**10 If prompted, type client configuration information on the command line.**

If the WAN boot programs do not find all the necessary installation information, the wanboot program prompts to provide the missing information. Type the additional information at the prompt.

### Example 13–5 Interactive WAN Boot Installation

In the following example, the wanboot program prompts you to set the key values for the client system during the installation.

Display the key values on the WAN boot server.

```
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=sha1
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=3des
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

The previous example uses the following information.

```
net=192.168.198.0
```

Specifies the IP address of the client's subnet

```
cid=010003BA152A42
```

Specifies the client's ID

```
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
```

Specifies the value of the client's HMAC SHA1 hashing key

```
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

Specifies the value of the client's 3DES encryption key

If you use an AES encryption key in your installation, change type=3des to type=aes to display the encryption key value.

Set the network boot argument variables in the OBP on the client.

```
ok setenv network-boot-arguments host-ip=192.168.198.136,
router-ip=192.168.198.129,subnet-mask=255.255.255.192,hostname=myclient,
bootserver=http://192.168.198.135/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
```

The following variables are set.

- The client IP address is set to 192.168.198.136.
- The client's router IP address is set to 192.168.198.129.
- The client's subnet mask is set to 255.255.255.192.
- The client's host name is set to myclient.
- The wanboot - cgi program is located at `http://192.168.198.135/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi`.

Boot and install the client.

```
ok boot net -o prompt - install
Resetting ...
```

```
Sun Blade 100 (UltraSPARC-IIe), No Keyboard
Copyright 1998-2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
OpenBoot 4.x.build 28, 512 MB memory installed, Serial #50335475.
Ethernet address 0:3:ba:e:f3:75, Host ID: 83000ef3.
```

```
Rebooting with command: boot net -o prompt
Boot device: /pci@1f,0/network@c,1 File and args: -o prompt
```

```
boot> 3des=9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

```
boot> sha1=b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
```

```
boot> go
```

The previous commands perform the following tasks.

- Installs the 3DES encryption key with the value `9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04` on the client
- Installs the HMAC SHA1 hashing key with the value `b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463` on the client
- Starts the installation

**See Also** For more information about how to display key values, see [wanbootutil\(1M\)](#).

For more information about how to set network boot arguments, see [set\(1\)](#).

For more information about how to boot a system, see [boot\(1M\)](#).

## ▼ To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With a DHCP Server

If you configured a DHCP server to support WAN boot options, you can use the DHCP server to provide client configuration information during the installation. For more information about configuring a DHCP server to support a WAN boot installation, see “(Optional) Providing Configuration Information With a DHCP Server” on page 190.

This procedure makes the following assumptions.

- The client system is running.
- You have either installed keys on the client, or you are performing an insecure installation. For information about installing keys on the client before your installation, see “Installing Keys on the Client” on page 194.
- You have configured your DHCP server to support the SbootURI and SHTTPproxy WAN boot options.

These options enable the DHCP server to provide the configuration information that is required by WAN boot.

For information about how to set installation options on your DHCP server, see “Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service (Tasks)” on page 47.

### 1 If the client system is currently running, bring the system to run level 0.

```
# init 0
```

The ok prompt is displayed.

### 2 At the ok prompt on the client system, set the network boot argument variables in OBP.

```
ok setenv network-boot-arguments dhcp,hostname=client-name
```

setenv network-boot-arguments      Instructs the OBP to set the following boot arguments

dhcp                                      Instructs the OBP to use the DHCP server to configure the client

hostname=client-name                  Specifies the host name you want to assign to the client

### 3 Boot the client from the network.

```
ok boot net - install
```

net - install      Instructs the client to use the network boot argument variables to boot from the WAN

The client installs over the WAN. If the WAN boot programs do not find all the necessary installation information, the wanboot program prompts to provide the missing information. Type the additional information at the prompt.

**Example 13-6** WAN Boot Installation With a DHCP Server

In the following example, the DHCP server on the network provides client configuration information. This sample requests the host name `myclient` for the client.

```
ok setenv network-boot-arguments dhcp, hostname=myclient
```

```
ok boot net - install
Resetting ...
```

```
Sun Blade 100 (UltraSPARC-IIe), No Keyboard
Copyright 1998-2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
OpenBoot 4.x.build 28, 512 MB memory installed, Serial #50335475.
Ethernet address 0:3:ba:e:f3:75, Host ID: 83000ef3.
```

```
Rebooting with command: boot net - install
Boot device: /pci@1f,0/network@0,1 File and args: - install
```

**See Also** For more information about how to set network boot arguments, see [set\(1\)](#).

For more information about how to boot a system, see [boot\(1M\)](#).

For more information about how to configure a DHCP server, see “(Optional) Providing Configuration Information With a DHCP Server” on page 190.

## ▼ To Perform a WAN Boot Installation With Local CD Media

If your client's OBP does not support WAN boot, you can install with a Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD inserted in the client's CD-ROM drive. When you use a local CD, the client retrieves the `wanboot` program from the local media, rather than from the WAN boot server.

This procedure assumes that you are using HTTPS in your WAN installation. If you are performing an insecure installation, do not display or install the client keys.

Follow these steps to perform a WAN boot installation from a local CD.

**1 Assume the same user role as the web server user on the WAN boot server.**

**2 Display the key value for each client key.**

```
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=net-ip,cid=client-ID,type=key-type
net-ip          The network IP address for the client you are installing.
```

*client-ID* The ID of the client you are installing. The client ID can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.

*key-type* The key type you are installing on the client. Valid key types are 3des, aes, or sha1.

The hexadecimal value for the key is displayed.

**3 Repeat the previous step for each type of client key you are installing.**

**4 On the client system, insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD in the CD-ROM drive.**

**5 Power on the client system.**

**6 Boot the client from the CD.**

```
ok boot cdrom -o prompt -F wanboot - install
```

cdrom Instructs the OBP to boot from the local CD-ROM

-o prompt Instructs the wanboot program to prompt the user to enter client configuration information

-F wanboot Instructs the OBP to load the wanboot program from the CD-ROM

- install Instructs the client to perform a WAN boot installation

The client's OBP loads the wanboot program from the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD. The wanboot program boots the system, and the boot> prompt is displayed.

**7 Type the encryption key value.**

```
boot> 3des=key-value
```

3des=key-value Specifies the hexadecimal string of the 3DES key that is displayed in step [Step 2](#).

If you use an AES encryption key, use the following format for this command.

```
boot> aes=key-value
```

**8 Type the hashing key value.**

```
boot> sha1=key-value
```

sha1=key-value Specifies the hexadecimal string that represents the hashing key value that is displayed in step [Step 2](#).

**9 Set the network interface variables.**

```
boot> variable=value[ , variable=value*]
```



Type the following variable and value pairs at the boot> prompt.

<code>host - ip=client-IP</code>	Specifies the IP address of the client.
<code>router - ip=router-ip</code>	Specifies the IP address of the network router.
<code>subnet - mask=mask-value</code>	Specifies the subnet mask value.
<code>hostname=client-name</code>	Specifies the host name of the client.
(Optional) <code>http - proxy=proxy-ip:port</code>	Specifies the IP address and port number of the network's proxy server.
<code>bootserver=wanbootCGI-URL</code>	Specifies the URL of the wanboot - cgi program on the web server.

---

**Note** – The URL value for the `bootserver` variable must not be an HTTPS URL. The URL must start with `http://`.

---

You can enter these variables in the following ways.

- Type one variable and value pair at the boot> prompt, then press the Return key.
 

```
boot> host-ip=client-IP
boot> subnet-mask=mask-value
```
- Type all the variable and value pairs on one boot> prompt line, then press the Return key. Type commas to separate each variable and value pair.
 

```
boot> host-ip=client-IP,subnet-mask=mask-value,
router-ip=router-ip,hostname=client-name,
http-proxy=proxy-ip:port,bootserver=wanbootCGI-URL
```

## 10 Type the following command to continue the boot process.

```
boot> go
```

The client installs over the WAN. If the WAN boot programs do not find all the necessary installation information, the wanboot program prompts to provide the missing information. Type the additional information at the prompt.

### Example 13-7 Installing With Local CD Media

In the following example, the wanboot program on a local CD prompts you to set the network interface variables for the client during the installation.

Display the key values on the WAN boot server.

```
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=sha1
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=3des
```

```
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

The previous example uses the following information.

```
net=192.168.198.0
```

Specifies the IP address of the client's subnet

```
cid=010003BA152A42
```

Specifies the client's ID

```
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
```

Specifies the value of the client's HMAC SHA1 hashing key

```
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

Specifies the value of the client's 3DES encryption key

If you use an AES encryption key in your installation, change `type=3des` to `type=aes` to display the encryption key value.

Boot and install the client.

```
ok boot cdrom -o prompt -F wanboot - install
Resetting ...
```

```
Sun Blade 100 (UltraSPARC-IIe), No Keyboard
Copyright 1998-2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
OpenBoot 4.x.build 28, 512 MB memory installed, Serial #50335475.
Ethernet address 0:3:ba:e:f3:75, Host ID: 83000ef3.
```

```
Rebooting with command: boot cdrom -F wanboot - install
Boot device: /pci@1f,0/network@c,1 File and args: -o prompt
```

```
boot> 3des=9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

```
boot> sha1=b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
```

```
boot> host-ip=192.168.198.124
```

```
boot> subnet-mask=255.255.255.128
```

```
boot> router-ip=192.168.198.1
```

```
boot> hostname=myclient
```

```
boot> client-id=010003BA152A42
```

```
boot> bootserver=http://192.168.198.135/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
```

```
boot> go
```

The previous commands perform the following tasks.

- Enters the 3DES encryption key with the value `9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04` on the client

- Enters the HMAC SHA1 hashing key with the value `b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463` on the client
- Sets the client IP address to `192.168.198.124`
- Sets the client's subnet mask to `255.255.255.128`
- Sets the client's router IP address to `192.168.198.1`
- Sets the client's host name to `myclient`
- Sets the client ID to `010003BA152A42`
- Sets the location of the `wanboot-cgi` program to `http://192.168.198.135/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi/`

**See Also** For more information about how to display key values, see [wanbootutil\(1M\)](#).

For more information about how to set network boot arguments, see [set\(1\)](#).

For more information about how to boot a system, see [boot\(1M\)](#).



## SPARC: Installing With WAN Boot (Examples)

---

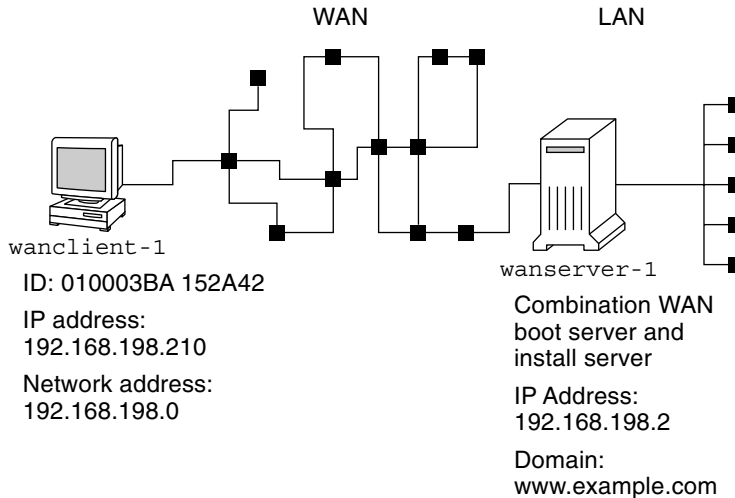
This chapter provides an example of setting up and installing client systems over a wide area network (WAN). The examples in this chapter describe how to perform a secure WAN boot installation over an HTTPS connection.

- “Sample Site Setup” on page 214
- “Create the Document Root Directory” on page 215
- “Create the WAN Boot Miniroot” on page 215
- “Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support” on page 215
- “Install the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server” on page 216
- “Create the /etc/netboot Hierarchy” on page 216
- “Copy the wanboot - cgi Program to the WAN Boot Server” on page 217
- “(Optional) Configure the WAN Boot Server as a Logging Server” on page 217
- “Configure the WAN Boot Server to Use HTTPS” on page 217
- “Provide the Trusted Certificate to the Client” on page 217
- “(Optional) Use Private Key and Certificate for Client Authentication” on page 218
- “Create the Keys for the Server and the Client” on page 218
- “Create the Flash Archive” on page 219
- “Create the sysidcfg File” on page 219
- “Create the Client's Profile” on page 220
- “Create and Validate the rules File” on page 220
- “Create the System Configuration File” on page 221
- “Create the wanboot . conf File” on page 221
- “Check the net Device Alias in OBP” on page 223
- “Install Keys on the Client” on page 223
- “Install the Client” on page 224

# Sample Site Setup

Figure 14–1 shows the site setup for this example.

FIGURE 14–1 Sample Site for WAN Boot Installation



This sample site has the following characteristics.

- The server wanserver-1 is to be configured as a WAN boot server and an install server.
- The IP address of wanserver-1 is 192.168.198.2.
- The domain name of wanserver-1 is www.example.com.
- wanserver-1 is running the current Oracle Solaris release.
- wanserver-1 is running the Apache web server. The Apache software on wanserver-1 is configured to support HTTPS.
- The client to be installed is named wanclient-1.
- wanclient-1 is an UltraSPARCII system.
- The client ID for wanclient-1 is 010003BA152A42.
- The IP address of wanclient-1 is 192.168.198.210.
- The IP address of the client's subnet is 192.168.198.0.
- The client system wanclient-1 has Internet access, but is not directly connected to the network that includes wanserver-1.
- wanclient-1 is a new system that is to be installed with the current Oracle Solaris release software.

## Create the Document Root Directory

To store the installation files and data, set up the following directories in the document root directory (`/opt/apache/htdocs`) on `wanserver-1`.

- Oracle Solaris Flash directory
 

```
wanserver-1# mkdir -p /opt/apache/htdocs/flash/
```
- WAN boot miniroot directory
 

```
wanserver-1# mkdir -p /opt/apache/htdocs/miniroot/
```
- wanboot program directory
 

```
wanserver-1# mkdir -p /opt/apache/htdocs/wanboot/
```

## Create the WAN Boot Miniroot

Use the `setup_install_server(1M)` with the `-w` option to copy the WAN boot miniroot and the Oracle Solaris software image to the `/export/install/Solaris_10` directory of `wanserver-1`.

Insert the Oracle Solaris Software media in the media drive that is attached to `wanserver-1`. Type the following commands.

```
wanserver-1# mkdir -p /export/install/cdrom0
wanserver-1# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
wanserver-1# ./setup_install_server -w /export/install/cdrom0/miniroot \
/export/install/cdrom0
```

Move the WAN boot miniroot to the document root directory (`/opt/apache/htdocs/`) of the WAN boot server.

```
wanserver-1# mv /export/install/cdrom0/miniroot/miniroot \
/opt/apache/htdocs/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc
```

## Check the Client OBP for WAN Boot Support

Determine that the client OBP supports WAN boot by typing the following command on the client system.

```
# eeprom | grep network-boot-arguments
network-boot-arguments: data not available
```

In the previous example, the `network-boot-arguments: data not available` output indicates that the client OBP supports WAN boot.

## Install the wanboot Program on the WAN Boot Server

To install the wanboot program on the WAN boot server, copy the program from the Oracle Solaris Software media to the WAN boot server's document root directory.

Insert the Oracle Solaris DVD or the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD in the media drive that is attached to wanserver - 1 and type the following commands.

```
wanserver-1# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools/Boot/platform/sun4u/  
wanserver-1# cp wanboot /opt/apache/htdocs/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc
```

## Create the /etc/netboot Hierarchy

Create the wanc<sub>lient</sub>-1 subdirectories of the /etc/netboot directory on the WAN boot server. The WAN boot installation programs retrieve configuration and security information from this directory during the installation.

wanc<sub>lient</sub>-1 is located on the subnet 192.168.198.0, and has a client ID of 010003BA152A42. To create the appropriate subdirectory of /etc/netboot for wanc<sub>lient</sub>-1, perform the following tasks.

- Create the /etc/netboot directory.
- Change the permissions of the /etc/netboot directory to 700.
- Change the ownership of the /etc/netboot directory to the owner of the web server process.
- Assume the same user role as the web server user.
- Create a subdirectory of /etc/netboot that is named after the subnet (192.168.198.0).
- Create a subdirectory of the subnet directory that is named after the client ID.
- Change the permissions of the /etc/netboot subdirectories to 700.

```
wanserver-1# cd /  
wanserver-1# mkdir /etc/netboot/  
wanserver-1# chmod 700 /etc/netboot  
wanserver-1# chown nobody:admin /etc/netboot  
wanserver-1# exit  
wanserver-1# su nobody  
Password:  
nobody# mkdir -p /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42  
nobody# chmod 700 /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0  
nobody# chmod 700 /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42
```



## Copy the wanboot - cgi Program to the WAN Boot Server

On systems that are running the current Oracle Solaris release, the `wanboot - cgi` program is located in the `/usr/lib/inet/wanboot/` directory. To enable the WAN boot server to transmit the installation data, copy the `wanboot - cgi` program to the `cgi - bin` directory in the web server software directory.

```
wanserver-1# cp /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/wanboot-cgi \  
/opt/apache/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi  
wanserver-1# chmod 755 /opt/apache/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
```

## (Optional) Configure the WAN Boot Server as a Logging Server

By default, all WAN boot logging messages are displayed on the client system. This default behavior enables you to quickly debug any installation issues.

If you want to view the boot and installation messages on the WAN boot server, copy the `bootlog - cgi` script to the `cgi - bin` directory on `wanserver - 1`.

```
wanserver-1# cp /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/bootlog-cgi /opt/apache/cgi-bin/  
wanserver-1# chmod 755 /opt/apache/cgi-bin/bootlog-cgi
```

## Configure the WAN Boot Server to Use HTTPS

To use HTTPS in your WAN boot installation, you must enable SSL support in the web server software. You must also install a digital certificate on the WAN boot server. This example assumes that the Apache web server on `wanserver - 1` is configured to use SSL. This example also assumes that a digital certificate and a certificate authority that establish the identity of `wanserver - 1` are already installed on `wanserver - 1`.

For examples about how to configure your web server software to use SSL, see your web server documentation.

## Provide the Trusted Certificate to the Client

By requiring the server to authenticate itself to the client, you protect the data that is transmitted from the server to the client over HTTPS. To enable server authentication, you provide a trusted certificate to the client. The trusted certificate enables the client to verify the identity of the server during the installation.

To provide the trusted certificate to the client, assume the same user role as the web server user. Then, split the certificate to extract a trusted certificate. Then, insert the trusted certificate in the client's `truststore` file in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy.

In this example, you assume the web server user role of `nobody`. Then, you split the server PKCS#12 certificate that is named `cert.p12`, and insert the trusted certificate in `/etc/netboot` directory for `wanclient - 1`.

```
wanserver-1# su nobody
Password:
wanserver-1# wanbootutil p12split -i cert.p12 -t \
/etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42/truststore
```

## (Optional) Use Private Key and Certificate for Client Authentication

To further protect your data during the installation, you might want to require `wanclient - 1` to authenticate itself to `wanserver - 1`. To enable client authentication in your WAN boot installation, insert a client certificate and private key in the client subdirectory of the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy.

To provide a private key and certificate to the client, perform the following tasks.

- Assume the same user role as the web server user
- Split the PKCS#12 file into a private key and a client certificate
- Insert the certificate in the client's `certstore` file
- Insert the private key in the client's `keystore` file

In this example, you assume the web server user role of `nobody`. Then, you split the server PKCS#12 certificate that is named `cert.p12`. You insert certificate in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy for `wanclient - 1`. You then insert the private key that you named `wanclient.key` in the client's `keystore` file.

```
wanserver-1# su nobody
Password:
wanserver-1# wanbootutil p12split -i cert.p12 -c \
/etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42/certstore -k wanclient.key
wanserver-1# wanbootutil keygmt -i -k wanclient.key \
-s /etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42/keystore \
-o type=rsa
```

## Create the Keys for the Server and the Client

To protect the data transmitted between the server and client, you create a hashing key and an encryption key. The server uses the hashing key to protect the integrity of the wanboot program. The server uses the encryption key to encrypt the configuration and installation data. The client uses the hashing key to check the integrity of the downloaded wanboot program. The client uses the encryption key to decrypt the data during the installation.

First, you assume the same user role as the web server user. In this example, the web server user role is `nobody`.

```
wanserver-1# su nobody
Password:
```

Then, you use the `wanbootutil keygen` command to create a master HMAC SHA1 key for `wanserver-1`.

```
wanserver-1# wanbootutil keygen -m
```

Then, create a hashing key and an encryption key for `wanclient-1`.

```
wanserver-1# wanbootutil keygen -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=sha1
wanserver-1# wanbootutil keygen -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=3des
```

The previous command creates a HMAC SHA1 hashing key and a 3DES encryption key for `wanclient-1`. `192.168.198.0` specifies the subnet of `wanclient-1`, and `010003BA152A42` specifies the client ID of `wanclient-1`.

## Create the Flash Archive

In this example, you create your Flash Archive by cloning the `wanserver-1` master system. The archive is named `sol_10_sparc`, and is copied exactly from the master system. The archive is an exact duplicate of the master system. The archive is stored in `sol_10_sparc.flar`. You save the archive in the `flash/archives` subdirectory of the document root directory on the WAN boot server.

```
wanserver-1# flarcreate -n sol_10_sparc \
/opt/apache/htdocs/flash/archives/sol_10_sparc.flar
```

## Create the sysidcfg File

To preconfigure the `wanclient-1` system, specify keywords and values in the `sysidcfg` file. Save this file in the appropriate subdirectory of the document root directory of `wanserver-1`.

**EXAMPLE 14-1** `sysidcfg` File for `client-1` System

The following is an example of a `sysidcfg` file for `wanclient-1`. The host name, IP address, and netmask of these systems have been preconfigured by editing the naming service. This file is located in the `/opt/apache/htdocs/flash/` directory.

```
network_interface=primary {hostname=wanclient-1
                           default_route=192.168.198.1
                           ip_address=192.168.198.210
                           netmask=255.255.0
                           protocol_ipv6=no}

timezone=US/Central
system_locale=C
```

EXAMPLE 14-1 sysidcfg File for client-1 System (Continued)

```
terminal=xterm
timeserver=localhost
name_service=NIS {name_server=matter(192.168.254.254)
                  domain_name=leti.example.com
                }
security_policy=none
```

## Create the Client's Profile

For the `wanclient-1` system, create a profile that is named `wanclient_1_prof`. The `wanclient_1_prof` file contains the following entries, which define the current Oracle Solaris release software to be installed on the `wanclient-1` system.

```
# profile keywords      profile values
# -----
install_type           flash_install
archive_location       https://192.168.198.2/flash/archives/cdrom0.flar
partitioning           explicit
filesystem             c0t1d0s0 4000 /
filesystem             c0t1d0s1 512 swap
filesystem             c0t1d0s7 free /export/home
```

The following list describes some of the keywords and values from this example.

<code>install_type</code>	The profile installs a Flash Archive on the clone system. All files are overwritten as in an initial installation.
<code>archive_location</code>	The compressed Flash Archive is retrieved from <code>wanserver-1</code> .
<code>partitioning</code>	The file system slices are determined by the <code>filesystem</code> keywords, value <code>explicit</code> . The size of root ( <code>/</code> ) is based on the size of the Flash Archive. The size of swap is set to the necessary size and is installed on <code>c0t1d0s1</code> . <code>/export/home</code> is based on the remaining disk space. <code>/export/home</code> is installed on <code>c0t1d0s7</code> .

## Create and Validate the rules File

The custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, programs use the `rules` file to select the correct installation profile for the `wanclient-1` system. Create a text file that is named `rules`. Then, add keywords and values to this file.

The IP address of the `wanclient-1` system is 192.168.198.210, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. Use the `network rule` keyword to specify the profile that the custom JumpStart programs should use to install `wanclient-1`.

```
network 192.168.198.0 - wanclient_1_prof -
```

This rules file instructs the custom JumpStart programs to use the wanclient\_1\_prof to install the current Oracle Solaris release software on wanclient-1.

Name this rule file wanclient\_rule.

After you create the profile and the rules file, you run the check script to verify that the files are valid.

```
wanserver-1# ./check -r wanclient_rule
```

If the check script does not find any errors, the script creates the rules.ok file.

Save the rules.ok file in the /opt/apache/htdocs/flash/ directory.

## Create the System Configuration File

Create a system configuration file that lists the locations of the sysidcfg file and the custom JumpStart files on the install server. Save this file in a directory that is accessible to the WAN boot server.

In the following example, the wanboot-cgi program looks for the sysidcfg and custom JumpStart files in the document root directory of the WAN boot server. The domain name of the WAN boot server is https://www.example.com. The WAN boot server is configured to use secure HTTP, so the data and files are protected during the installation.

In this example, the system configuration file is named sys-conf.s10-sparc, and the file is saved in the /etc/netboot hierarchy on the WAN boot server. The sysidcfg and custom JumpStart files are located in the flash subdirectory of the document root directory.

```
SsysidCF=https://www.example.com/flash/
SjumpsCF=https://www.example.com/flash/
```

## Create the wanboot.conf File

WAN boot uses the configuration information that is included in the wanboot.conf file to install the client machine. Create the wanboot.conf file in a text editor. Save the file to the appropriate client subdirectory in the /etc/netboot hierarchy on the WAN boot server.

The following wanboot.conf file for wanclient-1 includes configuration information for a WAN installation that uses secure HTTP. This file also instructs WAN boot to use a HMAC SHA1 hashing key and a 3DES encryption key to protect data.

```
boot_file=/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc
root_server=https://www.example.com/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
root_file=/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc
signature_type=sha1
encryption_type=3des
server_authentication=yes
client_authentication=no
resolve_hosts=
boot_logger=
system_conf=sys-conf.s10-sparc
```

This wanboot.conf file specifies the following configuration.

```
boot_file=/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc
```

The wanboot program is named wanboot.s10\_sparc. This program is located in the wanboot directory in the document root directory on wanserver-1.

```
root_server=https://www.example.com/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
```

The location of the wanboot-cgi program on wanserver-1 is https://www.example.com/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi. The https portion of the URL indicates that this WAN boot installation uses secure HTTP.

```
root_file=/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc
```

The WAN boot miniroot is named miniroot.s10\_sparc. The miniroot is located in the miniroot directory in the document root directory on wanserver-1.

```
signature_type=sha1
```

The wanboot program and the WAN boot file system are signed by using a HMAC SHA1 hashing key.

```
encryption_type=3des
```

The wanboot program and the WAN boot file system are encrypted with a 3DES key.

```
server_authentication=yes
```

The server is authenticated during the installation.

```
client_authentication=no
```

The client is not authenticated during the installation.

---

**Note** – If you performed the tasks in [“\(Optional\) Use Private Key and Certificate for Client Authentication” on page 218](#), set this parameter as `client_authentication=yes`

---

```
resolve_hosts=
```

No additional host names are needed to perform the WAN installation. All the host names that are required by the wanboot-cgi program are specified in the wanboot.conf file and the client certificate.

```
boot_logger=
```

Booting and installation log messages are displayed on the system console. If you configured the logging server in [“\(Optional\) Configure the WAN Boot Server as a Logging Server” on](#)

[page 217](#), and you want WAN boot messages to appear on the WAN boot server as well, set this parameter to `boot_logger=https://www.example.com/cgi-bin/bootlog.cgi`.

```
system_conf=sys-conf.s10-sparc
```

The system configuration file that specifies the locations of the `sysidcfg` and JumpStart files is located in the `sys-conf.s10-sparc` file in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy on `wanserver-1`.

In this example, you save the `wanboot.conf` file in the `/etc/netboot/192.168.198.0/010003BA152A42` directory on `wanserver-1`.

## Check the net Device Alias in OBP

To boot the client from the WAN with the `boot net`, the net device alias must be set to the client's primary network device. At the client `ok` prompt, type the `devalias` command to verify that the net alias is set to the primary network device `/pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@c,1`.

```
ok devalias
screen          /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/SUNW,m64B@2
net             /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@c,1
net2           /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@5,1
disk           /pci@1f,0/pci@1/scsi@8/disk@0,0
cdrom          /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ide@d/cdrom@0,0:f
keyboard       /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ebus@1/su@14,3083f8
mouse          /pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/ebus@1/su@14,3062f8
```

In the previous output example, the primary network device `/pci@1f,0/pci@1,1/network@c,1` is assigned to the net alias. You do not need to reset the alias.

## Install Keys on the Client

In “[Create the Keys for the Server and the Client](#)” on [page 218](#), you created the hashing key and encryption key to protect your data during the installation. To enable the client to decrypt the data transmitted from `wanserver-1` during the installation, install these keys on `wanclient-1`.

On `wanserver-1`, display the key values.

```
wanserver-1# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=sha1
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
wanserver-1# wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=192.168.198.0,cid=010003BA152A42,type=3des
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

The previous example uses the following information.

```
net=192.168.198.0
```

Specifies the IP address of the client's subnet

```
cid=010003BA152A42
```

Specifies the client's ID

```
b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
```

Specifies the value of the client's HMAC SHA1 hashing key

```
9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

Specifies the value of the client's 3DES encryption key

If you use an AES encryption key in your installation, change `type=3des` to `type=aes` to display the encryption key value.

At the ok prompt on `wanclient - 1`, install the keys.

```
ok set-security-key wanboot-hmac-sha1 b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463
ok set-security-key wanboot-3des 9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04
```

The previous commands perform the following tasks.

- Installs the HMAC SHA1 hashing key with a value of `b482aaab82cb8d5631e16d51478c90079cc1d463` on `wanclient - 1`
- Installs the 3DES encryption key with a value of `9ebc7a57f240e97c9b9401e9d3ae9b292943d3c143d07f04` on `wanclient - 1`

## Install the Client

You can perform an unattended installation by setting network boot argument variables for `wanclient - 1` at the ok prompt, and then booting the client.

```
ok setenv network-boot-arguments host-ip=192.168.198.210,
router-ip=192.168.198.1,subnet-mask=255.255.255.0,hostname=wanclient-1,
file=http://192.168.198.2/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
ok boot net - install
Resetting ...
```

```
Sun Blade 100 (UltraSPARC-IIe), No Keyboard
Copyright 1998-2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
OpenBoot 4.x.build_28, 512 MB memory installed, Serial #50335475.
Ethernet address 0:3:ba:e:f3:75, Host ID: 83000ef3.
```

```
Rebooting with command: boot net - install
Boot device: /pci@1f,0/network@c,1 File and args: - install
```

```
<time unavailable> wanboot progress: wanbootfs: Read 68 of 68 kB (100%)
<time unavailable> wanboot info: wanbootfs: Download complete
Fri Jun 20 09:16:06 wanboot progress: miniroot: Read 166067 of 166067 kB (100%)
Fri Jun 20Tue Apr 15 09:16:06 wanboot info: miniroot: Download complete
```



SunOS Release 5.10 Version WANboot10:04/11/03 64-bit  
Copyright 1983-2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.  
Use is subject to license terms.  
Configuring devices.

The following variables are set.

- The client IP address is set to 192.168.198.210.
- The client's router IP address is set to 192.168.198.1
- The client's subnet mask is set to 255.255.255.0
- The client's host name is set to wanclient - 1
- The wanboot - cgi program is located at <http://192.168.198.2/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi>

The client installs over the WAN. If the wanboot program does not find all the necessary installation information, you might be prompted to provide the missing information at the command line.



## WAN Boot (Reference)

---

This chapter briefly describes the commands and files you use to perform a WAN installation.

- “WAN Boot Installation Commands” on page 227
- “OBP Commands” on page 230
- “System Configuration File Settings and Syntax” on page 231
- “wanboot.conf File Parameters and Syntax” on page 231

### WAN Boot Installation Commands

The following tables describe the commands you use to perform a WAN boot installation.

- [Table 15-1](#)
- [Table 15-2](#)

TABLE 15-1 Preparing the WAN Boot Installation and Configuration Files

Task and Description	Command
Copy the Oracle Solaris installation image to <i>install-dir-path</i> , and copy the WAN boot miniroot to <i>wan-dir-path</i> on the install server's local disk.	<code>setup_install_server -w wan-dir-path install-dir-path</code>

TABLE 15-1 Preparing the WAN Boot Installation and Configuration Files (Continued)

Task and Description	Command
<p>Create a Solaris Flash archive that is named <i>name</i>.flar.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>name</i> is the name of the archive</li> <li>■ <i>optional-parameters</i> are optional parameters you can use to customize the archive</li> <li>■ <i>document-root</i> is the path to the document root directory on the install server</li> <li>■ <i>filename</i> is the name of the archive</li> </ul>	<code>flarcreate - n <i>name</i> [<i>optional-parameters</i>] <i>document-root</i>/flash/<i>filename</i></code>
<p>Check the validity of the custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, <i>rules</i> file that is named <i>rules</i>.</p>	<code>./check - r <i>rules</i></code>
<p>Check the validity of the <i>wanboot.conf</i> file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>net-ip</i> is the IP address of the client's subnet.</li> <li>■ <i>client-ID</i> can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.</li> </ul>	<code>bootconfchk /etc/netboot/<i>net-ip</i>/<i>client-ID</i>/wanboot.conf</code>
<p>Check for WAN boot installation support in the client OBP.</p>	<code>eeeprom   grep network-boot-arguments</code>

TABLE 15-2 Preparing the WAN Boot Security Files

Task and Description	Command
<p>Create a master HMAC SHA1 key for the WAN boot server.</p>	<code>wanbootutil keygen - m</code>
<p>Create a HMAC SHA1 hashing key for the client.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>net-ip</i> is the IP address of the client's subnet.</li> <li>■ <i>client-ID</i> can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.</li> </ul>	<code>wanbootutil keygen - c - o <i>net=net-ip</i>,<i>cid=client-ID</i>,<i>type=sha1</i></code>
<p>Create an encryption key for the client.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>net-ip</i> is the IP address of the client's subnet.</li> <li>■ <i>client-ID</i> can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.</li> <li>■ <i>key-type</i> is either 3des or aes.</li> </ul>	<code>wanbootutil keygen - c - o <i>net=net-ip</i>,<i>cid=client-ID</i>,<i>type=key-type</i></code>

TABLE 15-2 Preparing the WAN Boot Security Files (Continued)

Task and Description	Command
<p>Split a PKCS#12 certificate file and insert the certificate in the client's truststore.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>p12cert</i> is the name of the PKCS#12 certificate file.</li> <li>▪ <i>net-ip</i> is the IP address of the client's subnet.</li> <li>▪ <i>client-ID</i> can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.</li> </ul>	<pre>wanbootutil p12split -i p12cert -t /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/truststore</pre>
<p>Split a PKCS#12 certificate file and insert the client certificate in the client's certstore.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>p12cert</i> is the name of the PKCS#12 certificate file.</li> <li>▪ <i>net-ip</i> is the IP address of the client's subnet.</li> <li>▪ <i>client-ID</i> can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.</li> <li>▪ <i>keyfile</i> is the name of the client's private key.</li> </ul>	<pre>wanbootutil p12split -i p12cert -c /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/certstore -k keyfile</pre>
<p>Insert the client private key from a split PKCS#12 file in the client's keystore.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>keyfile</i> is the name of the client's private key.</li> <li>▪ <i>net-ip</i> is the IP address of the client's subnet.</li> <li>▪ <i>client-ID</i> can be a user-defined ID or a DHCP client ID.</li> </ul>	<pre>wanbootutil keymgmt -i -k keyfile -s /etc/netboot/net-ip/client-ID/keystore -o type=rsa</pre>
<p>Display the value of a HMAC SHA1 hashing key.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>net-ip</i> is the IP address of the client's subnet.</li> <li>▪ <i>client-ID</i> can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.</li> </ul>	<pre>wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=net-ip,cid=client-ID,type=sha1</pre>
<p>Display the value of an encryption key.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>net-ip</i> is the IP address of the client's subnet.</li> <li>▪ <i>client-ID</i> can be a user-defined ID or the DHCP client ID.</li> <li>▪ <i>key-type</i> is either 3des or aes.</li> </ul>	<pre>wanbootutil keygen -d -c -o net=net-ip,cid=client-ID,type=key-type</pre>
<p>Insert a hashing key or an encryption key on a running system. <i>key-type</i> can have a value of sha1, 3des, or aes.</p>	<pre>/usr/lib/inet/wanboot/ickey -o type=key-type</pre>

# OBP Commands

The following table lists the OBP commands that you type at the client ok prompt to perform a WAN boot installation.

TABLE 15-3 OBP Commands for a WAN Boot Installation

Task and Description	OBP Command
Begin an unattended WAN boot installation.	<code>boot net - install</code>
Begin an interactive WAN boot installation.	<code>boot net -o prompt - install</code>
Begin a WAN boot installation from a local CD.	<code>boot cdrom -F wanboot - install</code>
Install a hashing key before you begin a WAN boot installation. <i>key-value</i> is the hexadecimal value of the hashing key.	<code>set-security-key wanboot-hmac-sha1 <i>key-value</i></code>
Install an encryption key before you begin a WAN boot installation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>key-type</i> is either <code>wanboot-3des</code> or <code>wanboot-aes</code>.</li> <li>■ <i>key-value</i> is the hexadecimal value of the encryption key.</li> </ul>	<code>set-security-key <i>key-type</i> <i>key-value</i></code>
Verify that key values are set in OBP.	<code>list-security-keys</code>
Set client configuration variables before you begin your WAN boot installation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>client-IP</i> is the IP address of the client.</li> <li>■ <i>router-ip</i> is the IP address of the network router.</li> <li>■ <i>mask-value</i> is the subnet mask value.</li> <li>■ <i>client-name</i> is the host name of the client.</li> <li>■ <i>proxy-ip</i> is the IP address of the network's proxy server.</li> <li>■ <i>wanbootCGI-path</i> is the path to the wanboot CGI programs on the web server.</li> </ul>	<code>setenv network-boot-arguments host-ip=<i>client-IP</i>, router-ip=<i>router-ip</i>, subnet-mask=<i>mask-value</i>, hostname=<i>client-name</i>, http-proxy=<i>proxy-ip</i>, file=<i>wanbootCGI-path</i></code>
Check the network device alias.	<code>devalias</code>
Set the network device alias, where <i>device-path</i> is the path to the primary network device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To set the alias for the current installation only, type <code>devalias net <i>device-path</i></code>.</li> <li>■ To permanently set the alias, type <code>nvalias net <i>device-path</i></code>.</li> </ul>	

## System Configuration File Settings and Syntax

The system configuration file enables you to direct the WAN boot installation programs to the following files.

- `sysidcfg`
- `rules.ok`
- Custom JumpStart profile

The system configuration file is a plain text file, and must be formatted in the following pattern.

*setting=value*

The `system.conf` file must contain the following settings.

`SsysidCF=sysidcfg-file-URL`

This setting points to the directory on the install server that contains the `sysidcfg` file. For WAN installations that use HTTPS, set the value to a valid HTTPS URL.

`SjumpsCF=jumpstart-files-URL`

This setting points to the custom JumpStart directory that contains the `rules.ok` and profile files. For WAN installations that use HTTPS, set the value to a valid HTTPS URL.

You can store the `system.conf` in any directory that is accessible to the WAN boot server.

## wanboot.conf File Parameters and Syntax

The `wanboot.conf` file is a plain text configuration file that the WAN boot installation programs use to perform a WAN installation. The following programs and files use the information included in the `wanboot.conf` file to install the client machine.

- `wanboot-cgi` program
- WAN boot file system
- WAN boot miniroot

Save the `wanboot.conf` file in the appropriate client subdirectory in the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy on the WAN boot server. For information on how to define the scope of your WAN boot installation with the `/etc/netboot` hierarchy, see [“Creating the /etc/netboot Hierarchy on the WAN Boot Server” on page 165](#).

You specify information in the `wanboot.conf` file by listing parameters with associated values in the following format.

*parameter=value*

Parameter entries cannot span lines. You can include comments in the file by preceding the comments with the `#` character.

For detailed information about the wanboot.conf file, see the man page wanboot.conf(4).

You must set the following parameters in the wanboot.conf file.

`boot_file=wanboot-path`

This parameter specifies the path to the wanboot program. The value is a path relative to the document root directory on the WAN boot server.

```
boot_file=/wanboot/wanboot.s10_sparc
```

`root_server=wanbootCGI-URL/wanboot-cgi`

This parameter specifies the URL of the wanboot-cgi program on the WAN boot server.

- Use an HTTP URL if you are performing a WAN boot installation without client or server authentication.

```
root_server=http://www.example.com/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
```

- Use an HTTPS URL if you are performing a WAN boot installation with server authentication, or server and client authentication.

```
root_server=https://www.example.com/cgi-bin/wanboot-cgi
```

`root_file=miniroot-path`

This parameter specifies the path to the WAN boot miniroot on the WAN boot server. The value is a path relative to the document root directory on the WAN boot server.

```
root_file=/miniroot/miniroot.s10_sparc
```

`signature_type=sha1 | empty`

This parameter specifies the type of hashing key to use to check the integrity of the data and files that are transmitted.

- For WAN boot installations that use a hashing key to protect the wanboot program, set this value to sha1.

```
signature_type=sha1
```

- For insecure WAN installations that do not use a hashing key, leave this value blank.

```
signature_type=
```

`encryption_type=3des | aes | empty`

This parameter specifies the type of encryption to use to encrypt the wanboot program and WAN boot file system.

- For WAN boot installations that use HTTPS, set this value to 3des or aes to match the key formats you use. You must also set the signature\_type keyword value to sha1.

```
encryption_type=3des
```

or

```
encryption_type=aes
```

- For an insecure WAN boot installations that do not use encryption key, leave this value blank.



```
encryption_type=
```

```
server_authentication=yes | no
```

This parameter specifies if the server should be authenticated during the WAN boot installation.

- For WAN boot installations with server authentication or server and client authentication, set this value to `yes`. You must also set the value of `signature_type` to `sha1`, `encryption_type` to `3des` or `aes`, and the URL of `root_server` to an HTTPS value.

```
server_authentication=yes
```

- For insecure WAN boot installations that do not use server authentication or server and client authentication, set this value to `no`. You can also leave the value blank.

```
server_authentication=no
```

```
client_authentication=yes | no
```

This parameter specifies if the client should be authenticated during a WAN boot installation.

- For WAN boot installations with server and client authentication, set this value to `yes`. You must also set the value of `signature_type` to `sha1`, `encryption_type` to `3des` or `aes`, and the URL of `root_server` to an HTTPS value.

```
client_authentication=yes
```

- For WAN boot installations that do not use client authentication, set this value to `no`. You can also leave the value blank.

```
client_authentication=no
```

```
resolve_hosts=hostname | empty
```

This parameter specifies additional hosts that need to be resolved for the `wanboot -cgi` program during the installation.

Set the value to the host names of systems that are not specified previously in the `wanboot.conf` file or in a client certificate.

- If all the required hosts are listed in the `wanboot.conf` file or the client certificate, leave this value blank.

```
resolve_hosts=
```

- If specific hosts are not listed in the `wanboot.conf` file or the client certificate, set the value to these host names.

```
resolve_hosts=seahag,matters
```

```
boot_logger=bootlog-cgi-path | empty
```

This parameter specifies the URL to the `bootlog-cgi` script on the logging server.

- To record boot or installation log messages on a dedicated logging server, set the value to the URL of the `bootlog-cgi` script on the logging server.

```
boot_logger=http://www.example.com/cgi-bin/bootlog-cgi
```

- To display boot and installation messages on the client console, leave this value blank.

boot\_logger=

system\_conf=system.conf | *custom-system-conf*

This parameter specifies the path to the system configuration file that includes the location of sysidcfg and custom JumpStart files.

Set the value to the path to the sysidcfg and custom JumpStart files on the web server.

system\_conf=sys.conf

## PART IV

# Appendices

This part provides reference information.



## Troubleshooting (Tasks)

---

This chapter contains a list of specific error messages and general problems you might encounter when installing Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 software. The chapter also explains how to fix the problems. Start by using this list of sections to determine where in the installation process the problem occurred.

- “Problems With Setting Up Network Installations” on page 237
- “Problems With Booting a System” on page 238
- “Initial Installation of the Oracle Solaris OS” on page 244
- “Upgrading the Oracle Solaris OS” on page 246

---

**Note** – When you see the phrase “bootable media,” this means the Oracle Solaris installation program and JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, installation method.

---

### Problems With Setting Up Network Installations

Unknown client “*host\_name*”

**Cause:** The *host\_name* argument in the `add_install_client` command is not a host in the naming service.

**Solution:** Add the host *host\_name* to the naming service and run the `add_install_client` command again.

Error: <system name> does not exist in the NIS ethers map

Add it, and rerun the `add_install_client` command

**Description:** When you run the `add_install_client` command, the command fails with the above error.

**Cause:** The client you are adding to the install server does not exist in the server's `/etc/ethers` file.

**Solution:** Add the needed information to the `/etc/ethers` file on the install server and run the `add_install_client` command again.

1. Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

2. On the client, find the ethers address.

```
# ifconfig -a grep ethers
ether 8:0:20:b3:39:1d
```

3. On the install server, open the `/etc/ethers` file in an editor. Add the address to the list.
4. On the client, run `add_install_client` again as in this example.

```
# ./add_install_client bluegill sun4u
```

## Problems With Booting a System

### Booting From Media, Error Messages

le0: No carrier - transceiver cable problem

**Cause:** The system is not connected to the network.

**Solution:** If this is a nonnetworked system, ignore this message. If this is a networked system, ensure that the Ethernet cabling is attached securely.

The file just loaded does not appear to be executable

**Cause:** The system cannot find the proper media for booting.

**Solution:** Verify that the system has been set up properly to install the Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 software from the network from an install server. The following are examples of checks you can make.

- If you copied the images of the Oracle Solaris DVD or the Oracle Solaris Software CDs to the install server, ensure that you specified the correct platform group for the system when you set it up.
- If you are using DVD or CD media, ensure that the Oracle Solaris DVD or Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD is mounted and accessible on the install server.

boot: cannot open <filename> (**SPARC based systems only**)

**Cause:** This error occurs when you override the location of the boot - file by explicitly setting it.

---

**Note** – *filename* is a variable for the name of the file affected.

---

**Solution:** Follow these instructions:

- Reset the boot - file in the PROM to “ ” (blank).
- Ensure that the diag-switch is set to off and to true.

Can't boot from file/device

**Cause:** The installation media cannot find the bootable media.

**Solution:** Ensure that the following conditions are met:

- The DVD-ROM or CD-ROM drive is installed properly and turned on.
- Oracle Solaris DVD or the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD is inserted into the drive.
- The disc is free of damage or dirt.

WARNING: clock gained xxx days -- CHECK AND RESET DATE! (**SPARC based systems only**)

**Description:** This is an informational message.

**Solution:** Ignore the message and continue with the installation.

Not a UFS file system (**x86 based systems only**)

**Cause:** When the current Oracle Solaris release was installed (either through the Oracle Solaris installation program or custom JumpStart), no boot disk was selected. You now must edit the BIOS to boot the system.

**Solution:** Select the BIOS to boot. See your BIOS documentation for instructions.

## Booting From Media, General Problems

The system does not boot.

**Description:** When initially setting up a custom JumpStart server, you might encounter boot problems that do not return an error message. To verify information about the system and how the system is booting, run the boot command with the -v option. When you use the -v option, the boot command displays verbose debugging information about the screen.

---

**Note** – If this flag is not given, the messages are still printed, but the output is directed to the system log file. For more information, see [syslogd\(1M\)](#).

---

**Solution:** For SPARC based systems, at the ok prompt, type the following command.

```
ok boot net -v - install
```

Boot from DVD media fails on systems with Toshiba SD-M 1401 DVD-ROM

**Description:** If your system has a Toshiba SD-M1401 DVD-ROM with firmware revision 1007, the system cannot boot from the Oracle Solaris DVD.

**Solution:** Apply patch 111649-03, or later version, to update the Toshiba SD-M1401 DVD-ROM drive's firmware. The patch 111649-03 is available at <http://support.oracle.com/> (My Oracle Support) from the Patches and Updates tab.

The system hangs or panics when nonmemory PC cards are inserted. (**x86 based systems only**)

**Cause:** Nonmemory PC cards cannot use the same memory resources that are used by other devices.

**Solution:** To correct this problem, see the instructions for your PC card and check for the address range.

The system hangs before displaying the system prompt. (**x86 based systems only**)

**Solution:** You have hardware that is not supported. Check your hardware manufacturer's documentation.

## Booting From the Network, Error Messages

WARNING: getfile: RPC failed: error 5 (RPC Timed out).

**Description:** This error occurs when you have two or more servers on a network responding to an install client's boot request. The install client connects to the wrong boot server, and the installation hangs. The following specific reasons might cause this error to occur:

**Cause:** *Reason 1:* /etc/bootparams files might exist on different servers with an entry for this install client.

**Solution:** *Reason 1:* Ensure that servers on the network do not have multiple /etc/bootparams entries for the install client. If they do have multiple entries, remove duplicate client entries in the /etc/bootparams file on all install servers and boot servers except the one you want the install client to use.

**Cause:** *Reason 2:* Multiple /tftpboot or /rplboot directory entries might exist for this install client.



**Solution:** *Reason 2:* Ensure that servers on the network do not have multiple `/tftpboot` or `/rplboot` directory entries for the install client. If they do have multiple entries, remove duplicate client entries from the `/tftpboot` or `/rplboot` directories on all install servers and boot servers except the one you want the install client to use.

**Cause:** *Reason 3:* An install client entry might exist in the `/etc/bootparams` file on a server and an entry in another `/etc/bootparams` file that enables all systems to access the profile server. Such an entry resembles the following:

```
* install_config=profile_server:path
```

A line that resembles the previous entry in the NIS or NIS+ bootparams table can also cause this error.

**Solution:** *Reason 3:* If a wildcard entry is in the naming service bootparams map or table (for example, `* install_config=`), delete it and add it to the `/etc/bootparams` file on the boot server.

No network boot server. Unable to install the system. See installation instructions. (**SPARC based systems only**)

**Cause:** This error occurs on a system that you are attempting to install from the network. The system is not set up correctly.

**Solution:** Ensure that you correctly set up the system to install from the network. See [“Adding Systems to Be Installed From the Network With a CD Image” on page 97](#).

prom\_panic: Could not mount file system (**SPARC based systems only**)

**Cause:** This error occurs when you are installing Oracle Solaris from a network, but the boot software cannot locate the following:

- Oracle Solaris DVD, either the DVD or a copy of the DVD image on the install server
- Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD image, either the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD or a copy of the CD image on the install server

**Solution:** Ensure that the installation software is mounted and shared.

- If you are installing Oracle Solaris from the install server's DVD-ROM or CD-ROM drive, ensure that the Oracle Solaris DVD or Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD is inserted in the CD-ROM drive, is mounted, and is shared in the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file.
- If installing from a copy of the Oracle Solaris DVD image or Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD image on the install server's disk, ensure that the directory path to the copy is shared in the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file.

Timeout waiting for ARP/RARP packet... (**SPARC based systems only**)

**Cause:** *Reason 1:* The client is trying to boot from the network, but it cannot find a system that knows about the client.

**Solution:** *Reason 1:* Verify the system's host name is in the NIS or NIS+ naming service. Also, verify the bootparams search order in the boot server's `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file.

For example, the following line in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file indicates that JumpStart or the Oracle Solaris installation program first looks in the NIS maps for bootparams information. If the program does not find any information, the installer looks in the boot server's `/etc/bootparams` file.

```
bootparams: nis files
```

**Cause:** *Reason 2:* The client's Ethernet address is not correct.

**Solution:** *Reason 2:* Verify that the client's Ethernet address in the install server's `/etc/ethers` file is correct.

**Cause:** *Reason 3:* In a custom JumpStart installation, the `add_install_client` command specifies the platform group that uses a specified server as an install server. If the wrong architecture value is used when using the `add_install_client`, this problem occurs. For example, the machine you want to install is a sun4u, but you used i86pc instead.

**Solution:** *Reason 3:* Rerun `add_install_client` with the correct architecture value.

```
ip: joining multicasts failed on tr0 - will use link layer broadcasts for  
multicast (x86 based systems only)
```

**Cause:** This error message is displayed when you boot a system with a token ring card. Ethernet multicast and token ring multicast do not work the same way. The driver returns this error message because an invalid multicast address was provided to it.

**Solution:** Ignore this error message. If multicast does not work, IP uses layer broadcasts instead and does not cause the installation to fail.

```
Requesting Internet address for Ethernet_Address (x86 based systems only)
```

**Cause:** The client is trying to boot from the network, but it cannot find a system that knows about the client.

**Solution:** Verify the system's host name is listed in the naming service. If the system's host name is listed in the NIS or NIS+ naming service, and the system continues to print this error message, try rebooting.

```
RPC: Timed out No bootparams (whoami) server responding; still trying... (x86  
based systems only)
```

**Cause:** The client is trying to boot from the network, but it cannot find a system with an entry in the `/etc/bootparams` file on the install server.

**Solution:** Use `add_install_client` on the install server. Using this command adds the proper entry in the `/etc/bootparams` file, enabling the client to boot from the network.

Still trying to find a RPL server... (**x86 based systems only**)

**Cause:** The system is trying to boot from the network, but the server is not set up to boot this system.

**Solution:** On the install server, execute `add_install_client` for the system to be installed. The `add_install_client` command sets up an `/rplboot` directory, which contains the necessary network boot program.

CLIENT MAC ADDR: FF FF FF FF FF FF (**network installations with DHCP only**)

**Cause:** The DHCP server is not configured correctly. This error might occur if the options or macros are not correctly defined in the DHCP Manager software.

**Solution:** In the DHCP Manager software, verify that the options and macros are correctly defined. Confirm that the Router option is defined, and that the value of the Router option is correct for the subnet you are using for the network installation.

## Booting From the Network, General Problems

The system boots from the network, but from a system other than the specified install server.

**Cause:** An `/etc/bootparams` and perhaps an `/etc/ethers` entry exist on another system for the client.

**Solution:** On the name server, update the `/etc/bootparams` entry for the system that is being installed. The entry should conform to the following syntax:

```
install_system root=boot_server:path install=install_server:path
```

Also, ensure that only one `bootparams` entry is on the subnet for the install client.

The system does not boot from the network (**network installations with DHCP only**).

**Cause:** The DHCP server is not configured correctly. This error might occur if the system is not configured as an installation client on the DHCP server.

**Solution:** In the DHCP manager software, verify that installation options and macros are defined for the client system. For more information, see [“Preconfiguring System Configuration Information With the DHCP Service \(Tasks\)”](#) on page 47.

# Initial Installation of the Oracle Solaris OS

## Initial installation fails

**Solution:** If the Oracle Solaris installation fails, you must restart the installation. To restart the installation, boot the system from the Oracle Solaris DVD, the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD, or from the network.

You cannot uninstall the Oracle Solaris software after the software has been partially installed. You must restore your system from a backup or begin the Oracle Solaris installation process again.

`/cdrom/sol_Solaris_10/SUNWxxxx/reloc.cpio: Broken pipe`

**Description:** This error message is informational and does not affect the installation. The condition occurs when a write on a pipe does not have a reading process.

**Solution:** Ignore the message and continue with the installation.

## WARNING: CHANGE DEFAULT BOOT DEVICE (x86 based systems only)

**Cause:** This is an informational message. The default boot device set in the system's BIOS might be set to a device that requires you to use the Oracle Solaris Device Configuration Assistant to boot the system.

**Solution:** Continue with the installation and, if necessary, change the system's default boot device specified in the BIOS after you install the Oracle Solaris software to a device that does not require the Oracle Solaris Device Configuration Assistant.

---

**x86 only** – If you are using the `locale` keyword to test a custom JumpStart profile for an initial installation, the `pfinstall -D` command fails to test the profile. For a workaround, see the error message “could not select locale,” in the section, “[Upgrading the Oracle Solaris OS](#)” on page 246.

---

## ▼ x86: To Check IDE Disk for Bad Blocks

IDE disk drives do not automatically map out bad blocks like other drives supported by Oracle Solaris software. Before installing Oracle Solaris on an IDE disk, you might want to perform a surface analysis on the disk. To perform surface analysis on an IDE disk, follow this procedure.

### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “[Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)](#)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

**2 Boot to the installation media.**

**3 When you are prompted to select an installation type, select option 6, Single user shell.**

**4 Start the `format(1M)` program.**

```
# format
```

**5 Specify the IDE disk drive on which you want to perform a surface analysis.**

```
# cxdy
```

```
cx    Is the controller number
```

```
dy    Is the device number
```

**6 Determine if you have an `fdisk` partition.**

- If a Oracle Solaris `fdisk` partition already exists, proceed to [Step 7](#).

- If a Oracle Solaris `fdisk` partition does not exist, use the `fdisk` command to create a Oracle Solaris partition on the disk.

```
format> fdisk
```

**7 To begin the surface analysis, type:**

```
format> analyze
```

**8 Determine the current settings, type:**

```
analyze> config
```

**9 (Optional) To change settings, type:**

```
analyze> setup
```

**10 To find bad blocks, type:**

```
analyze> type_of_surface_analysis
```

```
type_of_surface_analysis    Is read, write, or compare
```

If `format` finds bad blocks, it remaps them.

**11 To exit the analysis, type:**

```
analyze> quit
```

**12 Determine if you want to specify blocks to remap.**

- If no, go to [Step 13](#).

- If yes, type:

```
format> repair
```

- 13 To exit the format program, type:  
`quit`
- 14 Restart the media in multiuser mode by typing the following command.  
`# exit`

## Upgrading the Oracle Solaris OS

### Upgrading, Error Messages

No upgradable disks

**Cause:** A swap entry in the `/etc/vfstab` file is causing the upgrade to fail.

**Solution:** Comment out the following lines in the `/etc/vfstab` file:

- All swap files and slices on disks not being upgraded
- Swap files that are no longer present
- Any unused swap slices

`usr/bin/bzcat` not found

**Cause:** Live Upgrade, a feature of Oracle Solaris, fails because of needing a patch cluster.

**Solution:** A patch is needed to install Live Upgrade. Ensure that you have the most recently updated patch list by consulting <http://support.oracle.com/> (My Oracle Support). Search for the knowledge document 1004881.1 - Solaris Live Upgrade Software Patch Requirements (formerly 206844) on My Oracle Support.

Upgradeable Solaris root devices were found, however, no suitable partitions to hold the Solaris install software were found. Upgrading using the Solaris Installer is not possible. It might be possible to upgrade using the Solaris Software 1 CDROM. (x86 based systems only)

**Cause:** You cannot upgrade with the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD because you do not have enough space.

**Solution:** To upgrade, you can either create a swap slice that is larger than or equal to 512 MB or use another method of upgrading such as the Oracle Solaris installation program from Oracle Solaris DVD, a net installation image, or JumpStart.

ERROR: Could not select locale (**x86 based systems only**)

**Cause:** When you test your JumpStart profile by using the `pfinstall -D` command, the dry run test fails under the following conditions:

- The profile contains the locale keyword.
- You're testing a release that contains GRUB, a feature of Oracle Solaris, software. **Starting with the Solaris 10 1/06 release**, the GRUB boot loader facilitates booting different operating systems installed on your system with the GRUB menu.

With the introduction of GRUB software, the miniroot is compressed. The software can no longer find the list of locales from the compressed miniroot. The miniroot is the smallest possible Oracle Solaris root (/) file system and is found on the Oracle Solaris installation media.

**Solution:** Perform the following steps. Use the following values.

- MEDIA\_DIR is /cdrom/cdrom0/
- MINIROOT\_DIR is \$MEDIA\_DIR/Solaris\_10/Tools/Boot
- MINIROOT\_ARCHIVE is \$MEDIA\_DIR/boot/x86.miniroot
- TEMP\_FILE\_NAME is /tmp/test

1. Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see [“Configuring RBAC \(Task Map\)”](#) in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

2. Uncompress the miniroot archive.

```
# /usr/bin/gzcat $MINIROOT_ARCHIVE > $TEMP_FILE_NAME
```

3. Create the miniroot device by using the `lofiadm` command.

```
# LOFI_DEVICE=/usr/sbin/lofiadm -a $TEMP_FILE_NAME
# echo $LOFI_DEVICE
/dev/lofi/1
```

4. Mount the miniroot with the `lofi` command under the Miniroot directory.

```
# /usr/sbin/mount -F ufs $LOFI_DEVICE $MINIROOT_DIR
```

5. Test the profile.

```
# /usr/sbin/install.d/pfinstall -D -c $MEDIA_DIR $path-to-jumpstart_profile
```

6. After the testing is completed, unmount the `lofi` device.

```
# umount $LOFI_DEVICE
```

7. Delete the `lofi` device.

```
# lofiadm -d $TEMP_FILE_NAME
```

## Upgrading, General Problems

The upgrade option is not presented even though there is a version of Solaris software that's upgradable on the system.

**Cause:** *Reason 1:* The `/var/sadm` directory is a symlink or it is mounted from another file system.

**Solution:** *Reason 1:* Move the `/var/sadm` directory into the root (`/`) or `/var` file system.

**Cause:** *Reason 2:* The `/var/sadm/softinfo/INST_RELEASE` file is missing.

**Solution:** *Reason 2:* Create a new `INST_RELEASE` file by using the following template:

```
OS=Solaris
VERSION=x
REV=0
```

*x* Is the version of Oracle Solaris software on the system

**Cause:** *Reason 3:* `SUNWusr` is missing from `/var/sadm/softinfo`.

**Solution:** *Solution 3:* You need to do an initial installation. The Oracle Solaris software is not upgradable.

Couldn't shut down or initialize the md driver

**Solution:** Follow these instructions:

- If the file system is not a RAID-1 volume, comment out in the `vsftab` file.
- If the file system is a RAID-1 volume, break the mirror and reinstall. For information about unmirroring, see “[Removing RAID-1 Volumes \(Unmirroring\)](#)” in *Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*.

The upgrade fails because the Solaris installation program cannot mount a file system.

**Cause:** During an upgrade, the script attempts to mount all the file systems that are listed in the system's `/etc/vfstab` file on the root (`/`) file system that is being upgraded. If the installation script cannot mount a file system, it fails and exits.

**Solution:** Ensure that all file systems in the system's `/etc/vfstab` file can be mounted. Comment out any file systems in the `/etc/vfstab` file that cannot be mounted or that might cause the problem so that the Oracle Solaris installation program does not try to mount them during the upgrade. Any system-based file systems that contain software to be upgraded (for example, `/usr`) cannot be commented out.

The upgrade fails

**Description:** The system does not have enough space for the upgrade.



**Cause:** Check “Upgrading With Disk Space Reallocation” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Planning for Installation and Upgrade* for the space problem and see if you can fix it without using auto-layout to reallocate space.

Problems upgrading RAID-1 volume root (/) file systems

**Solution:** If you have problems upgrading when using Solaris Volume Manager RAID-1 volumes that are the root (/) file system, see [Chapter 25, “Troubleshooting Solaris Volume Manager \(Tasks\)”](#), in *Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*.

## ▼ To Continue Upgrading After a Failed Upgrade

The upgrade fails and the system cannot be soft-booted. The failure is for reasons beyond your control, such as a power failure or a network connection failure.

- 1 **Reboot the system from the Oracle Solaris DVD, the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD, or from the network.**
- 2 **Choose the upgrade option for installation.**

The Oracle Solaris installation program determines if the system has been partially upgraded and continues the upgrade.

## x86: Problems With Live Upgrade When You Use GRUB

The following errors can occur when you use Live Upgrade and the GRUB boot loader on an x86 based system.

ERROR: The media product tools installation directory *path-to-installation-directory* does not exist.

ERROR: The media *dirctory* does not contain an operating system upgrade image.

**Description:** The error messages are seen when using the `luupgrade` command to upgrade a new boot environment.

**Cause:** An older version of Live Upgrade is being used. The Live Upgrade packages you have installed on your system are incompatible with the media and the release on that media.

**Solution:** Always use the Live Upgrade packages from the release you are upgrading to.

**Example:** In the following example, the error message indicates that the Live Upgrade packages on the system are not the same version as on the media.

```
# luupgrade -u -n s10u1 -s /mnt
Validating the contents of the media </mnt>.
```

```
The media is a standard Solaris media.  
ERROR: The media product tools installation directory  
</mnt/Solaris_10/Tools/Boot/usr/sbin/install.d/install_config> does  
not exist.  
ERROR: The media </mnt> does not contain an operating system upgrade  
image.
```

ERROR: Cannot find or is not executable: </sbin/biosdev>.

ERROR: One or more patches required by Live Upgrade has not been installed.

**Cause:** One or more patches required by Live Upgrade are not installed on your system. Beware that this error message does not catch all missing patches.

**Solution:** Before using Live Upgrade, always install all the required patches. Ensure that you have the most recently updated patch list by consulting (<http://support.oracle.com/>) (My Oracle Support). Search for the knowledge document 1004881.1 - Solaris Live Upgrade Software Patch Requirements (formerly 206844) on My Oracle Support.

ERROR: Device mapping command </sbin/biosdev> failed. Please reboot and try again.

**Cause:** *Reason 1:* Live Upgrade is unable to map devices because of previous administrative tasks.

**Solution:** *Reason 1:* Reboot the system and try Live Upgrade again

**Cause:** *Reason 2:* If you reboot your system and get the same error message, you have two or more identical disks. The device mapping command is unable to distinguish between them.

**Solution:** *Reason 2:* Create a new dummy fdisk partition on one of the disks. See the [fdisk\(1M\)](#) man page. Then reboot the system.

Cannot delete the boot environment that contains the GRUB menu

**Cause:** Live Upgrade imposes the restriction that a boot environment cannot be deleted if the boot environment contains the GRUB menu.

**Solution:** Use [lumake\(1M\)](#) or [luupgrade\(1M\)](#) commands to reuse that boot environment.

The file system containing the GRUB menu was accidentally remade. However, the disk has the same slices as before. For example, the disk was not re-sliced.

**Cause:** The file system that contains the GRUB menu is critical to keeping the system bootable. Live Upgrade commands do not destroy the GRUB menu. But, if you accidentally remake or otherwise destroy the file system containing the GRUB menu with a command other than a Live Upgrade command, the recovery software attempts to reinstall the GRUB menu. The recovery software puts the GRUB menu back in the same file system at the next reboot. For example, you might have used the `newfs` or `mkfs` commands on the file system and accidentally destroyed the GRUB menu. To restore the GRUB menu correctly, the slice must adhere to the following conditions:

- Contain a mountable file system
- Remain a part of the same Live Upgrade boot environment where the slice resided previously

Before rebooting the system, make any necessary corrective actions on the slice.

**Solution:** Reboot the system. A backup copy of the GRUB menu is automatically installed.

The GRUB menu's `menu.lst` file was accidentally deleted.

**Solution:** Reboot the system. A backup copy of the GRUB menu is automatically installed.

## ▼ System Panics When Upgrading With Live Upgrade Running Veritas VxVM

When you use Live Upgrade while upgrading and running Veritas VxVM, the system panics on reboot unless you upgrade by using the following procedure. The problem occurs if packages do not conform to Oracle Solaris advanced packaging guidelines.

### 1 Become superuser or assume an equivalent role.

---

**Note** – Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “Configuring RBAC (Task Map)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

---

Roles contain authorizations and privileged commands. For more information about roles, see “Configuring RBAC (Task Map)” in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

### 2 Create an inactive boot environment. See “Creating a New Boot Environment” in *Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning*.

### 3 Before upgrading the inactive boot environment, you must disable the existing Veritas software on the inactive boot environment.

#### a. Mount the inactive boot environment.

```
# lumount inactive_boot_environment_name mount_point
```

For example:

```
# lumount solaris8 /mnt
```

#### b. Change to the directory that contains the `vfstab`, for example:

```
# cd /mnt/etc
```

- c. Make a copy of the inactive boot environment's `vfstab` file, for example:

```
# cp vfstab vfstab.501
```

- d. In the copied `vfstab`, comment out all Veritas file system entries, for example:

```
# sed ' /vx\/dsk\/s\/^\/#\/g' < vfstab > vfstab.novxfs
```

The first character of each line is changed to #, which makes the line a comment line. Note that this comment line is different than the system file-comment lines.

- e. Copy the changed `vfstab` file, for example:

```
# cp vfstab.novxfs vfstab
```

- f. Change directories to the inactive boot environment's system file, for example:

```
# cd /mnt/etc
```

- g. Make a copy of the inactive boot environment's system file, for example:

```
# cp system system.501
```

- h. Comment out all “forceload:” entries that include `drv/vx`.

```
# sed '/forceload:  drv\/vx\/s\/^\/*\/' <system> system.novxfs
```

The first character of each line is changed to \*, which makes the line a command line. Note that this comment line is different than the `vfstab` file comment lines.

- i. Create the Veritas `install-db` file, for example:

```
# touch vx/reconfig.d/state.d/install-db
```

- j. Unmount the inactive boot environment.

```
# luumount inactive_boot_environment_name
```

- 4 Upgrade the inactive boot environment. See [Chapter 5, “Upgrading With Live Upgrade \(Tasks\),” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning\*](#).

- 5 Activate the inactive boot environment. See [“Activating a Boot Environment” in \*Oracle Solaris 10 8/11 Installation Guide: Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning\*](#).

- 6 Shut down the system.

```
# init 0
```

- 7 Boot the inactive boot environment in single-user mode:

```
OK boot -s
```

Several messages and error messages that contain “vxvm” or “VXVM” are displayed that can be ignored. The inactive boot environment becomes active.

## 8 Upgrade Veritas.

- a. Remove the Veritas VRTSvmsa package from the system, for example:

```
# pkgrm VRTSvmsa
```

- b. Change directories to the Veritas packages.

```
# cd /location_of_Veritas_software
```

- c. Add the latest Veritas packages to the system:

```
# pkgadd -d 'pwd' VRTSvxvm VRTSvmsa VRTSvmdoc VRTSvmmman VRTSvmdev
```

## 9 Restore the original vfstab and system files:

```
# cp /etc/vfstab.original /etc/vfstab  
# cp /etc/system.original /etc/system
```

## 10 Reboot the system.

```
# init 6
```

# x86: Service Partition Not Created by Default on Systems With No Existing Service Partition

If you install the current Oracle Solaris release on a system that does not currently include a service or diagnostic partition, the installation program might not create a service partition by default. If you want to include a service partition on the same disk as the Oracle Solaris partition, you must re-create the service partition before you install the current Oracle Solaris release.

If you installed the Solaris 8 2/02 OS on a system with a service partition, the installation program might not have preserved the service partition. If you did not manually edit the `fdisk` boot partition layout to preserve the service partition, the installation program deleted the service partition during the installation.

---

**Note** – If you did not specifically preserve the service partition when you installed the Solaris 8 2/02 OS, you might not be able to re-create the service partition and upgrade to the current Oracle Solaris release.

---

If you want to include a service partition on the disk that contains the Oracle Solaris partition, choose one of the following workaround methods.

## ▼ **To Install Software From a Network Installation Image or From the Oracle Solaris DVD**

To install the software from a net installation image or from the Oracle Solaris DVD over the network, follow these steps.

- 1 Delete the contents of the disk.**
- 2 Before you install, create the service partition by using the diagnostics CD for your system.**  
For information about how to create the service partition, see your hardware documentation.
- 3 Boot the system from the network.**  
The Customize fdisk Partitions screen is displayed.
- 4 To load the default boot disk partition layout, click Default.**  
The installation program preserves the service partition and creates the Oracle Solaris partition.

## ▼ **To Install From the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD or From a Network Installation Image**

To use the Oracle Solaris installation program to install from the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD or from a network installation image on a boot server, follow these steps.

- 1 Delete the contents of the disk.**
- 2 Before you install, create the service partition by using the diagnostics CD for your system.**  
For information about how to create the service partition, see your hardware documentation.
- 3 The installation program prompts you to choose a method for creating the Oracle Solaris partition.**
- 4 Boot the system.**
- 5 Select the Use rest of disk for Solaris partition option.**  
The installation program preserves the service partition and creates the Oracle Solaris partition.
- 6 Complete the installation.**

## Installing or Upgrading Remotely (Tasks)

---

This appendix describes how to use the installation program to install or upgrade to the Oracle Solaris OS on a machine or domain that does not have a directly attached DVD-ROM or CD-ROM drive.

---

**Note** – If you are installing or upgrading the Oracle Solaris OS on a multi-domain server, refer to the system controller or system service processor documentation before beginning the installation process.

---

### **SPARC: Using the Installation Program to Install or Upgrade From a Remote DVD-ROM or CD-ROM**

If you want to install the Oracle Solaris OS on a machine or domain that does not have a directly attached DVD-ROM or CD-ROM drive, you can use a drive that is attached to another machine. Both machines must be connected to the same subnet. Use the following instructions to complete the installation.

#### **▼ SPARC: To Install or Upgrade From a Remote DVD-ROM and CD-ROM**

---

**Note** – This procedure assumes that the system is running the Volume Manager. If you are not using the Volume Manager to manage media, refer to [System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems](#).

---

In the following procedure, the remote system with the DVD-ROM or CD-ROM is identified as *remote system*. The system that is the client to be installed is identified as *client system*.

- 1 Identify a system that is running the Oracle Solaris OS and has a DVD-ROM or CD-ROM drive.
- 2 On the *remote system* with the DVD-ROM or CD-ROM drive, insert the Oracle Solaris DVD or the Oracle Solaris Software for SPARC Platforms - 1 CD in the drive.

The Volume Manager mounts the disc.

- 3 On the remote system, change directories to the DVD or CD where the `add_install_client` command is located.

- For DVD media, type:

```
remote system# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools
```

- For CD media, type:

```
remote system# cd /cdrom/cdrom0
```

- 4 On the remote system, add the system that you want to install as a client.

- For DVD media, type:

```
remote system# ./add_install_client \
client_system_name arch
```

- For CD media, type:

```
remote system# ./add_install_client -s remote_system_name: \
/cdrom/cdrom0 client_system_name arch
```

*remote\_system\_name*      The name of the system with the DVD-ROM or CD-ROM drive

*client\_system\_name*      The name of the machine you want to install

*arch*                      The platform group of the machine you want to install, for example sun4u. On the system that you want to install, find the platform group by using the `uname -m` command.

- 5 Boot the *client system* that you want to install.

```
client system: ok boot net
```

The installation begins.

- 6 Follow the instructions to type system configuration information if needed.

- If you are using DVD media, follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installation. You are finished.
- If you are using CD media, the machine reboots and the installation program begins. After the Welcome panel, the Specify Media panel appears with Network File System selected. Proceed to [Step 7](#).



**7 On the Specify Media panel, click Next.**

The Specify Network File System Path panel appears and the text field contains the installation path.

```
client_system_ip_address:/cdrom/cdrom0
```

**8 On the remote system where the DVD or CD is mounted, change directories to root.**

```
remote system# cd /
```

**9 On the remote system, check for the path to the slice that has been shared.**

```
remote system# share
```

**10 On the remote system, unshare the Oracle Solaris DVD or Oracle Solaris Software for SPARC Platforms - 1 CD by using the path that is found in [Step 9](#). If paths lead to two slices, unshare both slices.**

```
remote system# unshare absolute_path
```

*absolute\_path* Is the absolute path shown in the share command

In this example, slice 0 and slice 1 are unshared.

```
remote system# unshare /cdrom/cdrom0
```

```
remote system# unshare /cdrom/cdrom0
```

**11 On the client system that you are installing, continue the installation by clicking Next.****12 If the installation program prompts you to insert the Oracle Solaris Software - 2 CD, repeat [Step 9](#) through [Step 11](#) to unshare the Oracle Solaris Software - 1 CD and to export and install the Oracle Solaris Software - 2 CD.****13 If the installation program prompts you to insert additional Oracle Solaris Software CDs, repeat [Step 9](#) through [Step 11](#) to unshare the Oracle Solaris Software CDs and to export and install the additional CDs.****14 If the installation program prompts you to insert the first Oracle Solaris Languages CD, repeat [Step 9](#) through [Step 11](#) to unshare the Oracle Solaris Software CDs and to export and install each Oracle Solaris Languages CD.**

When you export a Oracle Solaris Languages CD, an installer window appears on the machine where the CD-ROM is mounted. Ignore the installer window while you install the Oracle Solaris Languages CD. After you complete the installation of the Oracle Solaris Languages CDs, close the installer window.



# Glossary

---

<b>3DES</b>	([Triple DES] Triple-Data Encryption Standard). A symmetric-key encryption method that provides a key length of 168 bits.
<b>AES</b>	(Advanced Encryption Standard) A symmetric 128-bit block data encryption technique. The U.S. government adopted the Rijndael variant of the algorithm as its encryption standard in October 2000. AES replaces DES encryption as the government standard.
<b>archive</b>	<p>A file that contains a collection of files that were copied from a master system. The file also contains identification information about the archive, such as a name and the date that you created the archive. After you install an archive on a system, the system contains the exact configuration of the master system.</p> <p>An archive could be a differential archive, which is a Flash Archive that contains only the differences between two system images, an unchanged master image and an updated master image. The differential archive contains files to be retained, modified, or deleted from the clone system. A differential update changes only the files specified and is restricted to systems that contain software consistent with the unchanged master image.</p>
<b>arrow keys</b>	One of the four directional keys on the numeric keypad.
<b>begin script</b>	A user-defined Bourne shell script, specified within the <code>rules</code> file, that performs tasks before the Oracle Solaris software is installed on the system. You can use begin scripts only with custom JumpStart, a feature of Oracle Solaris, installations.
<b>boot</b>	To load the system software into memory and start it.
<b>boot archive</b>	<p><b>x86 only:</b> A boot archive is a collection of critical files that is used to boot the Oracle Solaris OS. These files are needed during system startup before the root (<code>/</code>) file system is mounted. Two boot archives are maintained on a system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ The boot archive that is used to boot the Oracle Solaris OS on a system. This boot archive is sometimes called the primary boot archive.</li><li>■ The boot archive that is used for recovery when the primary boot archive is damaged. This boot archive starts the system without mounting the root (<code>/</code>) file system. On the GRUB, a feature of Oracle Solaris, menu, this boot archive is called failsafe. The archive's essential purpose is to regenerate the primary boot archive, which is usually used to boot the system.</li></ul>
<b>boot environment</b>	A collection of mandatory file systems (disk slices and mount points) that are critical to the operation of the Oracle Solaris OS. These disk slices might be on the same disk or distributed across multiple disks.

The active boot environment is the one that is currently booted. Exactly one active boot environment can be booted. An inactive boot environment is not currently booted, but can be in a state of waiting for activation on the next reboot.

<b>boot loader</b>	<b>x86 only:</b> The boot loader is the first software program that runs after you turn on a system. This program begins the booting process.
<b>boot server</b>	A server system that provides client systems on the same network subnet with the programs and information that they need to start. A boot server is required to install over the network if the install server is on a different subnet than the systems on which Oracle Solaris software is to be installed.
<b>bootlog-cgi program</b>	The CGI program that enables a web server to collect and store remote client-booting and installation console messages during a WAN boot installation.
<b>certificate authority</b>	(CA) A trusted third-party organization or company that issues digital certificates that are used to create digital signatures and public-private key pairs. The CA guarantees that the individual who is granted the unique certificate is who she or he claims to be.
<b>certstore file</b>	A file that contains a digital certificate for a specific client system. During an SSL negotiation, the client might be asked to provide the certificate file to the server. The server uses this file to verify the identity of the client.
<b>CGI</b>	(Common Gateway Interface) An interface by which external programs communicate with the HTTP server. Programs that are written to use CGI are called CGI programs or CGI scripts. CGI programs handle forms or parse output the server does not normally handle or parse.
<b>checksum</b>	The result of adding a group of data items that are used for checking the group. The data items can be either numerals or other character strings that are treated as numerals during the checksum calculation. The checksum value verifies that communication between two devices is successful.
<b>client</b>	In the client-server model for communications, the client is a process that remotely accesses resources of a compute server, such as compute power and large memory capacity.
<b>clone system</b>	A system that you install by using a Flash Archive. The clone system has the same installation configuration as the master system.
<b>cluster</b>	A logical collection of packages (software modules). The Oracle Solaris software is divided into <i>software groups</i> , which are each composed of clusters and <i>packages</i> .
<b>command line</b>	A string of characters that begins with a command, often followed by arguments, including options, file names, and other expressions, and terminated by the end-of-line character.
<b>concatenation</b>	A RAID-0 volume. If slices are concatenated, the data is written to the first available slice until that slice is full. When that slice is full, the data is written to the next slice, serially. A concatenation provides no data redundancy unless it is contained in a mirror. See also RAID-0 volume.
<b>Core Software Group</b>	A software group that contains the minimum software that is required to boot and run the Oracle Solaris OS on a system. Core includes some networking software and the drivers that are required to run the Common Desktop Environment (CDE) desktop. Core does not include the CDE software.

---

<b>critical file systems</b>	File systems that are required by the Oracle Solaris OS. When you use Live Upgrade, a feature of Oracle Solaris, these file systems are separate mount points in the <code>vfstab</code> file of the active and inactive boot environments. Example file systems are <code>root (/)</code> , <code>/usr</code> , <code>/var</code> , and <code>/opt</code> . These file systems are always copied from the source to the inactive boot environment.
<b>custom JumpStart</b>	A type of installation in which the Oracle Solaris software is automatically installed on a system that is based on a user-defined profile. You can create customized profiles for different types of users and systems. A custom JumpStart installation is a JumpStart installation you create.
<b>custom probes file</b>	A file, which must be located in the same JumpStart directory as the <code>rules</code> file, that is a Bourne shell script that contains two types of functions: probe and comparison. Probe functions gather the information you want or do the actual work and set a corresponding <code>SI_</code> environment variable you define. Probe functions become probe keywords. Comparison functions call a corresponding probe function, compare the output of the probe function, and return 0 if the keyword matches or 1 if the keyword doesn't match. Comparison functions become rule keywords. See also <i>rules file</i> .
<b>dataset</b>	A generic name for the following ZFS entities: clones, file systems, snapshots, or volumes.
<b>decryption</b>	The process of converting coded data to plain text. See also <a href="#">encryption</a> .
<b>derived profile</b>	A profile that is dynamically created by a <code>begin</code> script during a custom JumpStart installation.
<b>DES</b>	(Data Encryption Standard) A symmetric-key encryption method that was developed in 1975 and standardized by ANSI in 1981 as ANSI X.3.92. DES uses a 56-bit key.
<b>Developer Oracle Solaris Software Group</b>	A software group that contains the End User Oracle Solaris Software Group plus the libraries, include files, man pages, and programming tools for developing software.
<b>DHCP</b>	(Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) An application-layer protocol. Enables individual computers, or clients, on a TCP/IP network to extract an IP address and other network configuration information from a designated and centrally maintained DHCP server or servers. This facility reduces the overhead of maintaining and administering a large IP network.
<b>differential archive</b>	A Flash Archive that contains only the differences between two system images, an unchanged master image and an updated master image. The differential archive contains files to be retained, modified, or deleted from the clone system. A differential update changes only the files that are specified and is restricted to systems that contain software consistent with the unchanged master image.
<b>digital certificate</b>	A nontransferable, nonforgeable, digital file issued from a third party that both communicating parties already trust.
<b>disc</b>	An optical disc, as opposed to a magnetic disk, which recognizes the common spelling that is used in the compact disc (CD) market. For example, a CD-ROM or DVD-ROM is an optical disc.
<b>disk</b>	A round platter, or set of platters, of a magnetized medium that is organized into concentric tracks and sectors for storing data such as files. See also <code>disc</code> .
<b>disk configuration file</b>	A file that represents a structure of a disk (for example, bytes/sector, flags, slices). Disk configuration files enable you to use the <code>pfinstall</code> command from a single system to test profiles on different-size disks.
<b>diskless client</b>	A client on a network that relies on a server for all of its disk storage.

<b>document root directory</b>	The root of a hierarchy on a web server machine that contains the files, images, and data you want to present to users who are accessing the web server.
<b>domain</b>	A part of the Internet naming hierarchy. A domain represents a group of systems on a local network that share administrative files.
<b>domain name</b>	The name that is assigned to a group of systems on a local network that share administrative files. The domain name is required for the Network Information Service (NIS) database to work properly. A domain name consists of a sequence of component names that are separated by periods (for example: <code>tundra.mpk.ca.us</code> ). As you read a domain name from left to right, the component names identify more general (and usually remote) areas of administrative authority.
<b>encryption</b>	The process of protecting information from unauthorized use by making the information unintelligible. Encryption is based on a code, called a key, which is used to decrypt the information. See also <a href="#">decryption</a> .
<b>End User Oracle Solaris Software Group</b>	A software group that contains the Core Software Group plus the recommended software for an end user, including the Common Desktop Environment (CDE) and DeskSet software.
<b>Entire Oracle Solaris Software Group</b>	A software group that contains the entire Oracle Solaris release.
<b>Entire Oracle Solaris Software Group Plus OEM Support</b>	A software group that contains the entire Oracle Solaris release plus additional hardware support for OEMs. This software group is recommended when installing Oracle Solaris software on SPARC based servers.
<b>/etc directory</b>	A directory that contains critical system configuration files and maintenance commands.
<b>/etc/netboot directory</b>	The directory on a WAN boot server that contains the client configuration information and security data that are required for a WAN boot installation.
<b>/export file system</b>	A file system on an OS server that is shared with other systems on a network. For example, the <code>/export</code> file system can contain the root ( <code>/</code> ) file system and swap space for diskless clients and the home directories for users on the network. Diskless clients rely on the <code>/export</code> file system on an OS server to boot and run.
<b>failsafe boot archive</b>	<b>x86 only:</b> A boot archive that is used for recovery when the primary boot archive is damaged. This boot archive starts the system without mounting the root ( <code>/</code> ) file system. This boot archive is called failsafe on the GRUB menu. The archive's essential purpose is to regenerate the primary boot archive, which is usually used to boot the system. See <i>boot archive</i> .
<b>fallback</b>	A reversion to the environment that ran previously. Use fallback when you are activating an environment and the boot environment that is designated for booting fails or shows some undesirable behavior.
<b>fdisk partition</b>	A logical partition of a disk drive that is dedicated to a particular operating system on x86 based systems. To install the Oracle Solaris software, you must set up at least one Oracle Solaris <code>fdisk</code> partition on an x86 based system. x86 based systems allow up to four different <code>fdisk</code> partitions on a disk. These partitions can be used to hold individual operating systems. Each operating system must be located on a unique <code>fdisk</code> partition. A system can only have one Oracle Solaris <code>fdisk</code> partition per disk.

---

<b>file server</b>	A server that provides the software and file storage for systems on a network.
<b>file system</b>	In the SunOS operating system, a tree-structured network of files and directories that you can access.
<b>finish script</b>	A user-defined Bourne shell script, specified within the <code>rules</code> file, that performs tasks after the Oracle Solaris software is installed on the system but before the system reboots. You use finish scripts with custom JumpStart installations.
<b>Flash Archive</b>	A Oracle Solaris installation feature that enables you to create an archive of the files on a system, called the <i>master system</i> . You can then use the archive to install other systems, making the other systems identical in their configuration to the master system. See also <i>archive</i> .
<b>format</b>	To put data into a structure or divide a disk into sectors for receiving data.
<b>function key</b>	One of the 10 or more keyboard keys that are labeled F1, F2, F3, and so on that are mapped to particular tasks.
<b>global zone</b>	In Oracle Solaris Zones, the global zone is both the default zone for the system and the zone used for system-wide administrative control. The global zone is the only zone from which a non-global zone can be configured, installed, managed, or uninstalled. Administration of the system infrastructure, such as physical devices, routing, or dynamic reconfiguration (DR), is only possible in the global zone. Appropriately privileged processes running in the global zone can access objects associated with other zones. See also <i>Oracle Solaris Zones</i> and <i>non-global zone</i> .
<b>GRUB</b>	<b>x86 only:</b> GNU GRand Unified Bootloader (GRUB) is an open source boot loader with a simple menu interface. The menu displays a list of operating systems that are installed on a system. GRUB enables you to easily boot these various operating systems, such as the Oracle Solaris OS, Linux, or Microsoft Windows.
<b>GRUB edit menu</b>	<b>x86 only:</b> A boot menu that is a submenu of the GRUB main menu. GRUB commands are displayed on this menu. These commands can be edited to change boot behavior.
<b>GRUB main menu</b>	<b>x86 only:</b> A boot menu that lists the operating systems that are installed on a system. From this menu, you can easily boot an operating system without modifying the BIOS or <code>fdisk</code> partition settings.
<b>hard link</b>	A directory entry that references a file on disk. More than one such directory entry can reference the same physical file.
<b>hash</b>	A number that is produced by taking some input and generating a number that is significantly shorter than the input. The same output value is always generated for identical inputs. Hash functions can be used in table search algorithms, in error detection, and in tamper detection. When used for tamper detection, hash functions are chosen such that it is difficult to find two inputs that yield the same hash result. MD5 and SHA-1 are examples of one-way hash functions. For example, a message digest takes a variable-length input such as a disk file and reduces it to a small value.
<b>hashing</b>	The process of changing a string of characters into a value or key that represents the original string.
<b>HMAC</b>	Keyed hashing method for message authentication. HMAC is used with an iterative cryptographic hash function, such as MD5 or SHA-1, in combination with a secret shared key. The cryptographic strength of HMAC depends on the properties of the underlying hash function.

<b>host name</b>	The name by which a system is known to other systems on a network. This name must be unique among all the systems within a particular domain (usually, this means within any single organization). A host name can be any combination of letters, numbers, and minus signs (-), but it cannot begin or end with a minus sign.
<b>HTTP</b>	(Hypertext Transfer Protocol) (n.) The Internet protocol that fetches hypertext objects from remote hosts. This protocol is based on TCP/IP.
<b>HTTPS</b>	A secure version of HTTP, implemented by using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).
<b>initial installation</b>	<p>An installation that overwrites the currently running software or initializes a blank disk.</p> <p>An initial installation of the Oracle Solaris OS overwrites the system's disk or disks with the new version of the Oracle Solaris OS. If your system is not running the Oracle Solaris OS, you must perform an initial installation. If your system is running an upgradable version of the Oracle Solaris OS, an initial installation overwrites the disk and does not preserve the OS or local modifications.</p>
<b>install server</b>	A server that provides the Oracle Solaris DVD or CD images from which other systems on a network can install Oracle Solaris (also called a <i>media server</i> ). You can create an install server by copying the Oracle Solaris DVD or CD images to the server's hard disk.
<b>IPv6</b>	IPv6 is a version (version 6) of Internet Protocol (IP) that is designed to be an evolutionary step from the current version, IPv4 (version 4). Deploying IPv6, by using defined transition mechanisms, does not disrupt current operations. In addition, IPv6 provides a platform for new Internet functionality.
<b>job</b>	A user-defined task to be completed by a computer system.
<b>JumpStart directory</b>	When you use a profile diskette for custom JumpStart installations, the JumpStart directory is the root directory on the diskette that contains all the essential custom JumpStart files. When you use a profile server for custom JumpStart installations, the JumpStart directory is a directory on the server that contains all the essential custom JumpStart files.
<b>JumpStart installation</b>	A type of installation in which the Oracle Solaris software is automatically installed on a system by using the factory-installed JumpStart software.
<b>Kerberos</b>	A network authentication protocol that uses strong, secret-key cryptography to enable a client and server to identify themselves to each other over an insecure network connection.
<b>key</b>	The code for encrypting or decrypting data. See also <a href="#">encryption</a> .
<b>keystore file</b>	A file that contains keys shared by a client and server. During a WAN boot installation, the client system uses the keys to verify the integrity of, or decrypt the data and files transmitted from, the server.
<b>LAN</b>	(local area network) A group of computer systems in close proximity that can communicate by way of some connecting hardware and software.
<b>LDAP</b>	(Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) A standard, extensible directory access protocol that is used by LDAP naming service clients and servers to communicate with each other.
<b>Live Upgrade</b>	An upgrade method that enables a duplicate boot environment to be upgraded while the active boot environment is still running, thus eliminating downtime of the production environment.



<b>locale</b>	A geographic or political region or community that shares the same language, customs, or cultural conventions (English for the U.S. is <code>en_US</code> , and English for the U.K. is <code>en_UK</code> ).
<b>logical device</b>	A group of physical slices on one or more disks that appear to the system as a single device. A logical device is called a volume in Solaris Volume Manager. A volume is functionally identical to a physical disk for the purposes of an application or file system.
<b>manifest section</b>	A section of a Flash Archive that is used to validate a clone system. The manifest section lists the files on a system to be retained, added to, or deleted from the clone system. This section is informational only. The section lists the files in an internal format and cannot be used for scripting.
<b>master system</b>	A system that you use to create a Flash Archive. The system configuration is saved in the archive.
<b>MD5</b>	(Message Digest 5) An iterative cryptographic hash function that is used for message authentication, including digital signatures. The function was developed in 1991 by Rivest.
<b>media server</b>	See <i>install server</i> .
<b>menu.lst file</b>	<b>x86 only:</b> A file that lists all the operating systems that are installed on a system. The contents of this file dictate the list of operating systems that is displayed on the GRUB menu. From the GRUB menu, you can easily boot an operating system without modifying the BIOS or <code>fdisk</code> partition settings.
<b>metadevice</b>	See <i>volume</i> .
<b>miniroot</b>	A minimal, bootable root ( <code>/</code> ) file system that is included in Oracle Solaris installation media. A miniroot consists of the Oracle Solaris software that is required to install and upgrade systems. On x86 based systems, the miniroot is copied to the system to be used as the failsafe boot archive. See <i>failsafe boot archive</i> .
<b>mirror</b>	See <i>RAID-1 volume</i> .
<b>mount</b>	The process of accessing a directory from a disk that is attached to a machine that is making the mount request or a remote disk on a network. To mount a file system, you need a mount point on the local system and the name of the file system to be mounted (for example, <code>/usr</code> ).
<b>mount point</b>	A workstation directory to which you mount a file system that exists on a remote machine.
<b>name server</b>	A server that provides a naming service to systems on a network.
<b>naming service</b>	A distributed network database that contains key system information about all the systems on a network so that the systems can communicate with each other. With a naming service, the system information can be maintained, managed, and accessed on a network-wide basis. Without a naming service, each system has to maintain its own copy of the system information in the local <code>/etc</code> files. Oracle supports the following naming services: LDAP, NIS, and NIS+.
<b>network installation</b>	A way to install software over the network from a system with a CD-ROM or DVD-ROM drive to a system without a CD-ROM or DVD-ROM drive. Network installations require a <i>name server</i> and an <i>install server</i> .
<b>networked systems</b>	A group of systems (called hosts) that are connected through hardware and software so that they can communicate and share information. Referred to as a local area network (LAN). One or more servers are usually needed when systems are networked.

<b>NIS</b>	The SunOS 4.0 (minimum) Network Information Service. A distributed network database that contains key information about the systems and the users on the network. The NIS database is stored on the master server and all the slave servers.
<b>NIS+</b>	The SunOS 5.0 (minimum) Network Information Service. NIS+ replaces NIS, the SunOS 4.0 (minimum) Network Information Service.
<b>non-global zone</b>	A virtualized operating system environment created within a single instance of the Oracle Solaris Operating System. One or more applications can run in a non-global zone without interacting with the rest of the system. Non-global zones are also called zones. See also <i>Oracle Solaris Zones</i> and <i>global zone</i> .
<b>nonnetworked systems</b>	Systems that are not connected to a network or do not rely on other systems.
<b>/opt file system</b>	A file system that contains the mount points for third-party and unbundled software.
<b>Oracle Solaris DVD or CD images</b>	The Oracle Solaris software that is installed on a system, which you can access on the Oracle Solaris DVDs or CDs or an install server's hard disk to which you have copied the Oracle Solaris DVD or CD images.
<b>Oracle Solaris installation program</b>	A graphical user interface (GUI) or command-line interface (CLI) installation program that uses wizard panels to guide you step-by-step through installing the Oracle Solaris software and third-party software.
<b>Oracle Solaris Zones</b>	A software partitioning technology used to virtualize operating system services and provide an isolated and secure environment for running applications. When you create a non-global zone, you produce an application execution environment in which processes are isolated from all other zones. This isolation prevents processes that are running in a zone from monitoring or affecting processes that are running in any other zones. See also <i>global zone</i> and <i>non-global zone</i> .
<b>OS server</b>	A system that provides services to systems on a network. To serve diskless clients, an OS server must have disk space set aside for each diskless client's root ( <i>/</i> ) file system and swap space ( <i>/export/root</i> , <i>/export/swap</i> ).
<b>package</b>	A collection of software that is grouped into a single entity for modular installation. The Oracle Solaris software is divided into <i>software groups</i> , which are each composed of <i>clusters</i> and packages.
<b>panel</b>	A container for organizing the contents of a window, a dialog box, or applet. The panel might collect and confirm user input. Panels might be used by wizards and follow an ordered sequence to fulfill a designated task.
<b>patch analyzer</b>	A script that you can run manually or as part of the Oracle Solaris installation program. The patch analyzer performs an analysis on your system to determine which (if any) patches will be removed by upgrading to a Oracle Solaris update.
<b>platform group</b>	A vendor-defined grouping of hardware platforms for the purpose of distributing specific software. Examples of valid platform groups are <i>i86pc</i> and <i>sun4u</i> .
<b>platform name</b>	The output of the <code>uname -i</code> command. For example, the platform name for the Ultra 60 is <i>SUNW, Ultra-60</i> .

---

<b>pool</b>	A logical group of devices describing the layout and physical characteristics of the available ZFS storage. Space for datasets is allocated from a pool.
<b>Power Management</b>	<p>Software that automatically saves the state of a system and turns it off after it is idle for 30 minutes. When you install the Oracle Solaris software on a system that complies with Version 2 of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's Energy Star guidelines, the Power Management software is installed by default. A sun4u SPARC based system is an example of a system that has Power Management installed by default. After a subsequent reboot, you are prompted to enable or disable the Power Management software.</p> <p>Energy Star guidelines require that systems or monitors automatically enter a "sleep state" (consume 30 watts or less) after the system or monitor becomes inactive.</p>
<b>primary boot archive</b>	A boot archive that is used to boot the Oracle Solaris OS on a system. This boot archive is sometimes called the primary boot archive. See <i>boot archive</i> .
<b>private key</b>	The decryption key used in public-key encryption.
<b>probe keyword</b>	A syntactical element that extracts attribute information about a system when using the custom JumpStart method to install. A probe keyword does not require you to set up a matching condition and run a profile as required for a rule. See also <i>rule</i> .
<b>profile</b>	A text file that defines how to install the Oracle Solaris software when using the custom JumpStart method. For example, a profile defines which software group to install. Every rule specifies a profile that defines how a system is to be installed when the rule is matched. You usually create a different profile for every rule. However, the same profile can be used in more than one rule. See also <i>rules file</i> .
<b>profile diskette</b>	A diskette that contains all the essential custom JumpStart files in its root directory (JumpStart directory).
<b>profile server</b>	A server that contains all the essential custom JumpStart files in a JumpStart directory.
<b>public key</b>	The encryption key used in public-key encryption.
<b>public-key cryptography</b>	A cryptographic system that uses two keys: a public key known to everyone, and a private key known only to the recipient of the message.
<b>RAID-0 volume</b>	A class of volume that can be a stripe or a concatenation. These components are also called submirrors. A stripe or concatenation is the basic building block for mirrors.
<b>RAID-1 volume</b>	A class of volume that replicates data by maintaining multiple copies. A RAID-1 volume is composed of one or more RAID-0 volumes called <i>submirrors</i> . A RAID-1 volume is sometimes called a <i>mirror</i> .
<b>RAID-Z storage pool</b>	A virtual device that stores data and parity on multiple disks that can be used as a ZFS storage pool. RAID-Z is similar to RAID-5.
<b>Reduced Network Support Software Group</b>	A software group that contains the minimum code that is required to boot and run a Oracle Solaris system with limited network service support. The Reduced Networking Software Group provides a multiuser text-based console and system administration utilities. This software group also enables the system to recognize network interfaces, but does not activate network services.
<b>root</b>	The top level of a hierarchy of items. Root is the one item from which all other items are descended. See <i>root directory</i> or <i>root (/) file system</i> .

<b>root (/) file system</b>	The top-level file system from which all other file systems stem. The root (/) file system is the base on which all other file systems are mounted, and is never unmounted. The root (/) file system contains the directories and files critical for system operation, such as the kernel, device drivers, and the programs that are used to start (boot) a system.
<b>root directory</b>	The top-level directory from which all other directories stem.
<b>rule</b>	A series of values that assigns one or more system attributes to a profile. A rule is used in a custom JumpStart installation.
<b>rules file</b>	A text file that contains a rule for each group of systems or single systems that you want to install automatically. Each rule distinguishes a group of systems, based on one or more system attributes. The rules file links each group to a profile, which is a text file that defines how the Oracle Solaris software is to be installed on each system in the group. A rules file is used in a custom JumpStart installation. See also <i>profile</i> .
<b>rules.ok file</b>	A generated version of the rules file. The rules.ok file is required by the custom JumpStart installation software to match a system to a profile. You <i>must</i> use the check script to create the rules.ok file.
<b>Secure Sockets Layer</b>	(SSL) A software library establishing a secure connection between two parties (client and server) used to implement HTTPS, the secure version of HTTP.
<b>server</b>	A network device that manages resources and supplies services to a client.
<b>SHA1</b>	(Secure Hashing Algorithm) The algorithm that operates on any input length less than $2^{64}$ to produce a message digest.
<b>shareable file systems</b>	File systems that are user-defined files such as /export/home and /swap. These file systems are shared between the active and inactive boot environment when you use Live Upgrade. Shareable file systems contain the same mount point in the vfstab file in both the active and inactive boot environments. Updating shared files in the active boot environment also updates data in the inactive boot environment. Shareable file systems are shared by default, but you can specify a destination slice, and then the file systems are copied.
<b>slice</b>	The unit into which the disk space is divided by the software.
<b>snapshot</b>	A read-only image of a ZFS file system or volume at a given point in time.
<b>software group</b>	A logical grouping of the Oracle Solaris software (clusters and packages). During a Oracle Solaris installation, you can install one of the following software groups: Core, End User Oracle Solaris Software, Developer Oracle Solaris Software, or Entire Oracle Solaris Software, and for SPARC systems only, Entire Oracle Solaris Software Group Plus OEM Support.
<b>standalone</b>	A computer that does not require support from any other machine.
<b>state database</b>	A database that stores information about the state of your Solaris Volume Manager configuration. The state database is a collection of multiple, replicated database copies. Each copy is referred to as a <i>state database replica</i> . The state database tracks the location and status of all known state database replicas.
<b>state database replica</b>	A copy of a state database. The replica ensures that the data in the database is valid.

---

<b>submirror</b>	See <i>RAID-0 volume</i> .
<b>subnet</b>	A working scheme that divides a single logical network into smaller physical networks to simplify routing.
<b>subnet mask</b>	A bit mask that is used to select bits from an Internet address for subnet addressing. The mask is 32 bits long and selects the network portion of the Internet address and 1 or more bits of the local portion.
<b>superuser</b>	A special user who has privileges to perform all administrative tasks on the system. The superuser has the ability to read and write to any file, run all programs, and send kill signals to any process.
<b>swap space</b>	A slice or file that temporarily holds the contents of a memory area till it can be reloaded in memory. Also called the <i>/swap</i> or <i>swap volume</i> .
<b>sysidcfg file</b>	A file in which you specify a set of special system configuration keywords that preconfigure a system.
<b>system configuration file</b>	( <i>system.conf</i> ) A text file in which you specify the locations of the <i>sysidcfg</i> file and the custom JumpStart files you want to use in a WAN boot installation.
<b>time zone</b>	Any of the 24 longitudinal divisions of the earth's surface for which a standard time is kept.
<b>truststore file</b>	A file that contains one or more digital certificates. During a WAN boot installation, the client system verifies the identity of the server that is trying to perform the installation by consulting the data in the <i>truststore</i> file.
<b>unmount</b>	The process of removing access to a directory on a disk that is attached to a machine or to a remote disk on a network.
<b>update</b>	An installation, or to perform an installation, on a system that changes software that is of the same type. Unlike an upgrade, an update might downgrade the system. Unlike an initial installation, software of the same type that is being installed must be present before an update can occur.
<b>upgrade</b>	An installation that merges files with existing files and preserves modifications where possible.  An upgrade of the Oracle Solaris OS merges the new version of the Oracle Solaris OS with the existing files on the system's disk or disks. An upgrade saves as many modifications as possible that you have made to the previous version of the Oracle Solaris OS.
<b>upgrade option</b>	An option that is presented by the Oracle Solaris installation program. The upgrade procedure merges the new version of Oracle Solaris with existing files on your disk or disks. An upgrade also saves as many local modifications as possible since the last time Oracle Solaris was installed.
<b>URL</b>	(Uniform Resource Locator) The addressing system used by the server and the client to request documents. A URL is often called a location. The format of a URL is <i>protocol://machine:port/document</i> .  A sample URL is <code>http://www.example.com/index.html</code> .
<b>/usr file system</b>	A file system on a standalone system or server that contains many of the standard UNIX programs. Sharing the large <i>/usr</i> file system with a server rather than maintaining a local copy minimizes the overall disk space that is required to install and run the Oracle Solaris software on a system.
<b>utility</b>	A standard program, usually furnished at no charge with the purchase of a computer, that does the computer's housekeeping.

<b>/var file system</b>	A file system or directory (on standalone systems) that contains system files that are likely to change or grow over the life of the system. These files include system logs, vi files, mail files, and UUCP files.
<b>virtual device</b>	A logical device in a ZFS pool, which can be a physical device, a file, or a collection of devices.
<b>volume</b>	<p>A group of physical slices or other volumes that appear to the system as a single logical device. A volume is functionally identical to a physical disk for the purposes of an application or file system.</p> <p>In some command-line utilities, a volume is called a metadvice. Volume is also called <i>pseudo device</i> or <i>virtual device</i> in standard UNIX terms.</p>
<b>Volume Manager</b>	A program that provides a mechanism to administer and obtain access to the data on DVD-ROMs, CD-ROMs, and diskettes.
<b>WAN</b>	(wide area network) A network that connects multiple local area networks (LANs) or systems at different geographical sites by using telephone, fiber-optic, or satellite links.
<b>WAN boot installation</b>	A type of installation that enables you to boot and install software over a wide area network (WAN) by using HTTP or HTTPS. The WAN boot installation method enables you to transmit an encrypted Flash Archive over a public network and perform a custom JumpStart installation on a remote client.
<b>WAN boot miniroot</b>	A miniroot that has been modified to perform a WAN boot installation. The WAN boot miniroot contains a subset of the software in the Oracle Solaris miniroot. See also <a href="#">miniroot</a> .
<b>WAN boot server</b>	A web server that provides the configuration and security files that are used during a WAN boot installation.
<b>wanboot-cgi program</b>	The CGI program that retrieves and transmits the data and files that are used in a WAN boot installation.
<b>wanboot.conf file</b>	A text file in which you specify the configuration information and security settings that are required to perform a WAN boot installation.
<b>wanboot program</b>	The second-level boot program that loads the WAN boot miniroot, client configuration files, and installation files that are required to perform a WAN boot installation. For WAN boot installations, the wanboot binary performs tasks similar to the ufsboot or inetboot second-level boot programs.
<b>ZFS</b>	A file system using storage pools to manage physical storage.
<b>zone</b>	See <i>non-global zone</i>

# Index

---

## Numbers and Symbols

- 3DES encryption key
  - installing with wanboot program, 203
  - encrypting data for WAN boot installation, 138

## A

- add\_install\_client, description, 125
- add\_install\_client command
  - example
    - boot server for DVD media, 77
    - for boot server for CD media, 100
    - same subnet for CD media, 100
    - specifying serial console, 78, 101
    - with DHCP for CD media, 100
    - with DHCP for DVD media, 76, 77
  - example for specifying a serial console, 78, 101
- add\_to\_install\_server, description, 125
- adding
  - dataless clients
    - with CD media, 97
    - with DVD media, 73
  - locale.org\_dir table entries, 46
  - systems from network, 67, 89
- AES encryption key
  - installing
    - with wanboot program, 203
  - encrypting data for WAN boot installation, 138
- archive
  - creating an archive, WAN boot installation, 176
  - installing with WAN boot, 199–211

## archive (Continued)

- storing in document root directory for WAN boot installation, 145
- WAN boot profile example, 180

## B

- banner command, 126
- boot: cannot open /kernel/unix message, 238
- boot command syntax for WAN boot installations, 230
- boot\_file parameter, 232
- boot\_logger parameter, 233
- boot server
  - creating on subnet
    - with DVD media, 71
  - creating on subnet with CD media, 95
  - creating with DVD media, example, 73
  - description, 62
  - requirement for network installation, 62
- bootconfchk command, syntax, 228
- booting the system, resetting terminals and display first, 126
- bootlog-cgi program, specifying in wanboot.conf file, 233
- bootlog file, directing to logging server, 169
- bootparams file, updating, 243
- bootserver variable, 203

**C**

- c option, `add_install_client` command, 99
- Can't boot from file/device message, 238
- certificates, *See* digital certificates
- `certstore` file
  - description, 147
  - inserting client certificate, 218
- CHANGE DEFAULT BOOT DEVICE message, 244
- check script
  - syntax for WAN boot installations, 228
  - testing rules, 181
- client, requirements for WAN boot installation, 142
- client and server authentication, configuring for WAN boot installation, 218
- `client_authentication` parameter, 233
- CLIENT MAC ADDR error message, 243
- `client_name`, description, 99
- clock gained xxx days message, 238
- color depth, preconfiguring, 43
- commands to start an installation, x86 based systems, 84, 107
- comments, in `wanboot.conf` file, 231
- configuring
  - DHCP server to support installation
    - tasks, DVD media, 67, 89
  - DHCP service for WAN boot installation, 190
  - WAN boot server, 157–169
- corrupted binaries, with WAN boot installations, 150
- CPUs (processors), WAN boot installation requirements, 142
- creating
  - boot server on a subnet with CD media, 89, 95
  - boot server on a subnet with DVD media, 67, 71
  - `/etc/locale` file, 45
  - install server with CD media, 89, 90, 119, 122
  - install server with DVD media, 67, 68, 118, 120
  - WAN boot
    - custom JumpStart files, 175–183
    - document root directory, 157
    - `/etc/netboot` directory, 165–167
    - Flash Archive, 176
    - installation files, 175–183
    - WAN boot miniroot, 158–160

- custom JumpStart installation
  - examples, WAN boot installation profile, 180
  - with WAN boot installation, 175–183

**D**

- d option, `add_install_client` command, 98
- date and time, preconfiguring, 42
- denial of service attacks, with WAN boot installations, 150
- `devalias` command, syntax, 230
- device drivers, installing, 84, 107
- DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol), preconfiguring, 42
- DHCP service
  - configuring for WAN boot installation, 190
  - creating macros for Oracle Solaris install, 52
  - creating options for Oracle Solaris installation, 48
  - description, 47
  - Oracle Solaris network boot and install, 47
  - sample script for adding options and macros, 56
  - Sun vendor options for WAN boot installation, 190
  - WAN boot installation requirements, 142
- `dhadm` command, using in script, 56
- digital certificates
  - description, 138, 149
  - preparing for WAN boot installations, 217–218, 218
  - protecting data during WAN boot installation, 138
  - requirements for WAN boot installation, 149
- directories
  - document root
    - creating, 157, 215
    - description, 144
    - example, 144, 215
  - `/etc/netboot`
    - configuration and security files, description, 146
    - description, 146–149
    - example, 148
    - sharing configuration and security files, 147–149
    - sharing configuration and security files among clients, 146
    - storing configuration and security files, 146
    - `/etc/netboot` directory, 165–167



disk space, requirements for WAN boot  
 installation, 142  
 display resolution, preconfiguring, 43  
 displaying  
   mounted file systems, 125  
   platform name, 126  
   shared file systems, 125  
   system information, 126  
 document root directory  
   creating, 157  
   description, 144  
   example, 144, 215  
 domain name, preconfiguring, 42

## E

eeprom command, checking OBP support of WAN boot  
 installations, 228  
 encrypting data during WAN boot installation  
   with digital certificate, 217–218, 218  
   with HTTPS, 169–175  
   with private key, 218  
 encrypting data with HTTPS, WAN boot  
 installation, 138–139  
 encryption key  
   creating, 218–219  
   description, 138  
   encrypting data during WAN boot installation, 138  
   installing  
     example, 196, 198, 223–224  
     methods to install, 194–199  
     with wanboot program, 203  
   specifying in wanboot.conf file, 232  
 encryption\_type parameter, 232  
 /etc/bootparams file, enabling JumpStart directory  
 access, 243  
 /etc/locale file, 45  
 /etc/netboot directory  
   configuration and security files, description, 146  
   configuring client and server authentication, 218  
   creating, 165–167, 216  
   description, 146–149  
   example, 148

/etc/netboot directory (*Continued*)

  inserting  
     client private key, 218  
     digital certificate, 218  
     trusted certificate, 217–218  
   permissions, 165–167  
   sharing configuration and security files among  
   clients, 146, 147–149  
   storing configuration and security files  
     entire network installations, 146, 165  
     entire subnet installations, 146, 165  
     single-client installations, 146, 165

## F

failed upgrade, rebooting problems, 248  
 file variable, 201  
 files and file systems  
   displaying mounted file systems, 125  
   displaying shared file systems, 125  
   system configuration syntax, 231  
   WAN boot file system, 134  
 wanboot.conf  
   description, 231–234  
   syntax, 231–234  
 flarcreate command, syntax for WAN boot  
 installations, 228

## G

graphical user interface (GUI), command to start (x86  
 based systems), 84, 107  
 graphics card, preconfiguring, 43  
 GRUB based booting  
   command reference, 126–130  
   installing x86 clients over the network with  
   (DVD), 81, 105

## H

hard disks, size, space available, 69

## hashing key

- creating, 218–219
- description, 138
- installing
  - example, 223–224
  - methods to install, 194–199
  - with wanboot program, 203
- protecting data during WAN boot installation, 138
- specifying in wanboot.conf file, 232

HMAC SHA1 hashing key, *See* hashing key

host-ip variable, 201

host name, preconfiguring, 42

hostname variable, 201

HTTP over Secure Sockets Layer, *See* HTTPS

http-proxy variable, 201

## HTTPS

- description, 138–139
- protecting data during WAN boot installation, 138–139
- requirements to use with WAN boot, 169–175

**I**

## install server

- creating with CD media, 90
  - creating with CD media, example, 93, 119, 122
  - creating with DVD media, 68
  - creating with DVD media, example, 70, 118, 120
  - on subnet, 70, 113, 116
  - system types applicable, 61–63
  - WAN boot installation requirements, 142
- install time updates (ITUs), installing, 84, 107
- installation, WAN boot, description, 133–134
- installing

- device drivers, 84, 107
- install time updates (ITUs), 84, 107

## IP addresses

- preconfiguring, 42
- preconfiguring a default route, 42

IPv6, preconfiguring, 42

IRQ level, preconfiguring, 43

**K**

- Kerberos, preconfiguring, 42
- keyboard language and layout, preconfiguring, 43
- keys, *See* encryption key, hashing key
- keystore file
  - description, 147
  - inserting client private key, 218
- keywords, sysidcfg file, 22–40

**L**

- le0: No carrier - transceiver cable problem message, 238
- list-security-keys command, syntax, 230
- locale file, 45
- locale.org\_dir table, adding entries, 46
- log files, for WAN boot installation, 169
- logging server
  - configuring for WAN boot installation, 217
  - description, 142
  - location of log messages, 169
  - WAN boot installation requirements, 142
- logging server, specifying in wanboot.conf file, 233

**M**

- Makefile file, 44
- memory, WAN boot installation requirements, 142
- monitor type, preconfiguring, 42
- mount command, 125
- mounting, displaying mounted file systems, 125

**N**

- name server, preconfiguring, 42
- names/naming
  - host name, 99
  - system configuration file for WAN boot installation, 184
  - system platform name determination, 126
- naming service, preconfiguring, 42
- net device alias, checking and resetting, 193, 223

- netmask, preconfiguring, 42
  - network-boot-arguments OBP variables
    - setting in WAN boot installations, 203
    - syntax, 230
  - network installation
    - See also* WAN boot installation
    - description, 61–63
    - preparing, 61–63
    - requirements, 61–63
    - using CD media, 90, 95
    - using DVD media, 68, 71
    - using PXE, 64
    - WAN boot installation example, 213–225
  - network interface, preconfiguring, 42
  - nistbladm command, 46, 47
  - No carrier - transceiver cable problem message, 238
  - Not a UFS filesystem message, 238
  - nvalias command, syntax, 230
- O**
- OBP
    - checking for WAN boot support, 161, 215
    - checking net device alias, 193, 223
    - setting net device alias, 193
    - setting variables in WAN boot installations, 203
    - WAN boot installation requirements, 142
  - OpenBoot PROM, *See* OBP
  - Oracle Solaris installation program
    - graphical user interface (GUI), command to start (x86 based systems), 84, 107
    - text installer
      - command to start in console session (x86 based systems), 84, 107
      - command to start in desktop session (x86 based systems), 84, 107
  - output files, boot log file for WAN boot installation, 169
- P**
- p option of check script, 181
  - permissions, /etc/netboot directory, 166
  - PKCS#12 file
    - preparing for WAN boot installation, 218
    - requirements for WAN boot installation, 149
  - planning
    - WAN boot installation
      - information required to install, 150–151
      - server layout, 143–144
      - sharing configuration and security files, 147–149
      - storing configuration and security files, 146–149
      - storing installation files, 144
      - storing wanboot-cgi program, 149
      - system requirements, 141
      - web server requirements, 143
  - platforms
    - install server setup, 100
    - name determination, 126
  - pointing device, preconfiguring, 43
  - Power Management, 40
  - Preboot Execution Environment (PXE)
    - BIOS setup requirements, 81, 105
    - description, 64
    - guidelines, 64
  - preconfiguring system configuration information
    - advantages, 17–18
    - choosing a method, 41–43
    - with DHCP, 47
    - Power Management, 40
    - using a naming service, 43
    - using sysidcfg file, 43
  - preparing for installation
    - client for WAN boot installation, 192–199
    - preconfiguring system information
      - advantages, 17–18
      - methods, 41–43
    - WAN boot installation, 153–190
  - primary document directory, *See* document root directory
  - printenv command, checking for WAN boot support, 215
  - privacy issues with WAN boot installations, 150
  - processors, WAN boot installation requirements, 142
  - profiles
    - examples
      - WAN boot installation, 180

profiles (*Continued*)

- naming, 179

## protecting data during WAN boot installation

- with encryption key, 138
- with hashing key, 138
- with HTTPS, 138–139

prtconf command, 126

## PXE (Preboot Execution Environment)

- BIOS setup requirements, 81, 105
- description, 64
- guidelines, 64

**R**

## requirements

- network installation, servers, 61–63
- WAN boot installation, 141

reset command, 126

resetting display and terminal after I/O interrupts, 126

resolve\_hosts parameter, 233

root\_file parameter, 232

root password, preconfiguring, 42

root\_server parameter, 232

router-ip variable, 201

RPC Timed out message, 242

rules, validating for WAN boot installation, 181

rules file, validating for WAN boot installation, 181

**S**

## SbootURI DHCP option

- description, 51

- using with WAN boot installations, 190

screen size, preconfiguring, 43

secure HTTP, *See* HTTPS

Secure Sockets Layer, using with WAN boot installation, 169–175

## security

- WAN boot installation
  - description, 137–139

security issues for WAN boot installations, 150

security policy, preconfiguring, 42

serial console, 83, 106

serial console (*Continued*)

- specifying with add\_install\_client command, 78, 101

server\_authentication parameter, 232

## servers

- network installation setup with CD media
  - standalone installation, 97
- network installation setup with DVD media
  - standalone installation, 73
- requirements for network installation, 61–63
- WAN boot installation
  - configuration options, 143–144
  - descriptions, 141
  - requirements, 141
  - web server software requirements, 143

## set-security-key command

- installing keys on WAN boot client, 223–224
- syntax, 230

setenv command, syntax, 230

setting up a serial console, 83, 106

## setup\_install\_server

- description, 125
- for WAN boot installation, 158–160
- syntax for WAN boot installations, 227

## sharing, WAN boot configuration

- information, 147–149

showmount command, 125

## SHTTPproxy DHCP option

- description, 52
- using with WAN boot installations, 190

signature\_type parameter, 232

size, hard disk, space available, 69

SjumpsCF parameter, 184, 231

SSL, using with WAN boot installation, 169–175

SsysidCF parameter, 184, 231

starting an installation, x86 based systems, 84, 107

## subnet

- boot server creation on, with CD media, 95
- boot server creation on, with DVD media, 71

subnet-mask variable, 201

## sysidcfg file

- auto\_reg keyword, description, 23–26
- guidelines and requirements, 18–40
- keyboard keyword, description, 27

- sysidcfg file (*Continued*)
- keywords, 22–40
  - name\_service keyword, description, 28–31
  - network\_interface keyword, description, 31–36
  - root\_password keyword, description, 37
  - security\_policy keyword, description, 37–38
  - service\_profile keyword, description, 38
  - syntax, 21–22
  - system\_locale keyword, description, 38–39
  - terminal keyword, description, 39
  - timeserver keyword, description, 39–40
  - timezone keyword, description, 39
  - WAN boot, example, 178
- system.conf file, *See* system configuration file
- system\_conf parameter, 233
- system configuration file
- creating for WAN boot installation, 221
  - description, 147
  - examples
    - insecure WAN boot installation, 185
    - secure WAN boot installation, 185, 221
  - SjumpsCF setting, 231
  - specifying in wanboot.conf file, 233
  - SsysidCF setting, 231
  - syntax, 231
- system information, displaying, 126
- T**
- terminal type, preconfiguring, 42
- testing
- WAN boot
    - rules file, 181
    - wanboot.conf file, 187
- text installer
- command to start in console session (x86 based systems), 84, 107
  - command to start in desktop session (x86 based systems), 84, 107
- time and date, preconfiguring, 42
- time zone, preconfiguring, 42
- timed out RPC error, 242
- token ring card, booting error with, 242
- transceiver cable problem message, 238
- Triple DES encryption key, *See* 3DES encryption key
- troubleshooting
- booting from network with DHCP, 243
  - booting from wrong server, 243
  - general installation problems
    - booting from the network with DHCP, 243
    - booting the system, 243
  - trust anchor, *See* trusted certificate
  - trusted certificate, inserting in truststore file, 217–218
  - truststore file
    - description, 147
    - inserting trusted certificate, 217–218
- U**
- Unknown client error message, 237
- upgrade, failed upgrade, 248
- V**
- validating
- rules files, for WAN boot installation, 181
  - wanboot.conf file, 187
- /var/yp/make command, 45
- /var/yp/Makefile, 44
- W**
- WAN boot file system, description, 134
- WAN boot installation
- boot log-cgi program, specifying in wanboot.conf file, 233
  - checking rules file, 181
  - client requirements, 142
  - client authentication
    - requirements, 139–140
    - specifying in wanboot.conf file, 233
  - commands, 227–229
  - configuration and security files, description, 146
  - configuring
    - client and server authentication, 218

WAN boot installation, configuring (*Continued*)

- DHCP service support, 190
- WAN boot server, 157–169
- copying wanboot - cgi program, 167–168
- corrupted binaries, 150
- creating
  - begin scripts, 183
  - finish scripts, 183
  - Flash Archive, 176
- denial of service attacks, 150
- description, 133–134
- digital certificates, requirements, 149
- document root directory
  - description, 144
  - example, 144
  - files, 144
- encrypting data
  - with encryption key, 138
  - with HTTPS, 138–139, 169–175
- encryption key
  - displaying value, 194–199
  - installing, 194–199
  - specifying in wanboot . conf file, 232
- encryption key privacy issues, 150
- /etc/netboot directory
  - creating, 165–167
  - description, 146–149
  - example, 148
  - setting permissions, 166
- examples
  - checking client OBP support, 161, 215
  - checking net device alias, 193, 223
  - configuring logging server, 169, 217
  - copying wanboot - cgi program, 217
  - creating /etc/netboot directory, 166
  - creating custom JumpStart profile, 220
  - creating encryption key, 174, 218–219
  - creating Flash Archive, 219
  - creating hashing key, 174, 218–219
  - creating rules file, 220–221
  - creating sysidcfg file, 219–220
  - creating system configuration file, 221
  - creating the /etc/netboot directory, 216
  - creating the WAN boot miniroot, 215

WAN boot installation, examples (*Continued*)

- custom JumpStart profile, 180
- document root directory, 215
- enabling client authentication, 218
- enabling server authentication, 172, 218
- /etc/netboot directory, 148
- inserting client certificate, 172, 218
- inserting client private key, 172, 218
- inserting trusted certificate, 172, 217–218
- installing encryption key in OBP, 196, 223–224
- installing encryption key on running client, 198
- installing from local CD media, 209
- installing hashing key in OBP, 196, 223–224
- installing hashing key on running client, 198
- installing wanboot program, 216
- installing with DHCP service, 206
- interactive installation, 204
- network setup, 214
- noninteractive installation, 201, 224–225
- preparing digital certificates, 218
- setting net device alias, 193
- sysidcfg file, 178
- system configuration file, 185
- unattended installation, 201, 224–225
- using encryption, 218–219
- wanboot . conf file, 187, 188, 221–223
- hashing key
  - displaying value, 194–199
  - installing, 194–199
  - specifying in wanboot . conf file, 232
- hashing key privacy issues, 150
- information required to install, 150–151
- insecure configuration, 140
- installing a client
  - methods to install, 199
  - required tasks, 191
- installing encryption key, 194–199
- installing hashing key, 194–199
- installing the wanboot program, 162–164
- logging server, specifying in wanboot . conf file, 233
- noninteractive installation, 224–225
- planning
  - document root directory, 144
  - /etc/netboot directory, 146–149

- WAN boot installation, planning (*Continued*)
  - server layout, 143–144
  - sharing configuration and security files, 146
  - storing configuration and security files, 146–149
  - storing installation files, 144
  - system requirements, 141
- protecting data, 138
- requirements
  - client CPU, 142
  - client disk space, 142
  - client memory, 142
  - DHCP service, 142
  - digital certificates, 149
  - install server disk space, 142
  - logging server, 142
  - OBP for client, 142
  - operating system for web server, 143
  - SSL version support, 143
  - WAN boot server, 141
  - web proxy, 143
  - web server, 143
- secure configuration
  - description, 139–140
  - requirements, 139–140
  - tasks to install, 153
- security configurations, description, 139–140
- security issues, 150
- sequence of events, 135–137
- server authentication
  - requirements, 139–140
  - specifying in `wanboot.conf` file, 232
- server configurations, description, 143–144
- sharing configuration and security files
  - entire network, 146, 165
  - entire subnet, 146, 165
  - specific client, 146, 165
- storing the `wanboot-cgi` program, 149
- system requirements, 141
- system configuration file
  - specifying in `wanboot.conf` file, 233
  - syntax, 231
- unattended installation, 224–225
- WAN boot miniroot
  - creating, 158–160
- WAN boot installation, WAN boot miniroot (*Continued*)
  - description, 134
  - specifying in `wanboot.conf` file, 232
  - storing in document root directory, 145
- `wanboot-cgi` program, 167–168
  - copying to WAN boot server, 167–168
  - specifying in `wanboot.conf` file, 232
- `wanboot.conf` file
  - parameters, 231–234
  - syntax, 231–234
  - validating, 187
- `wanboot` program
  - description, 133
  - installing, 162–164
  - specifying in `wanboot.conf` file, 232
  - storing in document root directory, 145
- `wanbootutil` command
  - creating encryption key, 218–219
  - creating hashing key, 218–219
  - creating private key, 171
  - creating trusted certificate, 171
- web server requirements, 143
- when to use, 134
- WAN boot miniroot
  - creating, 158–160, 215
  - description, 134
  - specifying in `wanboot.conf` file, 232
  - storing in document root directory, 145
- WAN boot server
  - configuring, 157–169
  - copying `wanboot-cgi` program, 167–168
  - description, 141
  - requirements, 141
  - web server requirements, 143
- `wanboot-cgi` program
  - copying to WAN boot server, 167–168, 217
  - description, 146
  - order of search through `/etc/netboot` directory, 147
  - selecting client configuration information, 147
  - specifying in `wanboot.conf` file, 232
  - storing, 149

- wanboot.conf file
  - creating for WAN boot installation, 221–223, 231–234
  - description, 147, 231–234
  - examples
    - insecure WAN boot installation, 188
    - secure WAN boot installation, 187, 221
  - syntax, 231–234
  - validating for WAN boot installation, 187, 221–223
- wanboot program
  - description, 133
  - installing keys for WAN boot installation, 203
  - installing on WAN boot server, 162–164, 216
  - storing in document root directory, 145
  - tasks performed during WAN boot installation, 137
- wanboot program, specifying in wanboot.conf file, 232
- wanbootutil command
  - configuring client and server authentication, 171, 218
  - creating a hashing key, 218–219
  - creating an encryption key, 218–219
  - displaying a hashing key value, 223–224
  - displaying an encryption key value, 223–224
  - inserting client digital certificate, 171, 218
  - inserting client private key, 171, 218
  - inserting trusted certificate, 171, 217–218
  - splitting a PKCS#12 file, 171, 217–218, 218
- WARNING: CHANGE DEFAULT BOOT DEVICE, 244
- WARNING: clock gained xxx days message, 238
- web proxy, WAN boot installation requirements, 143
- web proxy, preconfiguring, 42